

Some interesting problems

We'd like to motivate this study of algebra with some problems that we hope you will find interesting. Although we eventually solve them in this text, it might surprise you that in this class, we're interested not in the solutions, but in *why the solutions work*. I could in fact tell you how to solve them right here, and we'd be done soon enough; on to vacation! But then you wouldn't have learned what makes this course so beautiful *and important*. It would be like walking through a museum with me as your tour guide. I can summarize the purpose of each displayed article, but you can't learn enough in a few moments to appreciate it in the same way as someone with a foundational background in that field. The purpose of this course is to give you at least a foundational background in algebra.

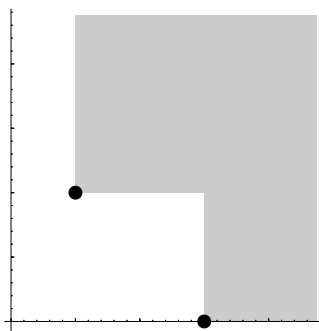
Still, let's take a preliminary stroll through the museum, and consider these exhibits.

The Hilbert-Dickson game

Consider the following game. The playing board is the first quadrant of the x - y axis. Players take turns doing the following:

1. Choose some point (a, b) such that a and b are both integers, and that does not yet lie in a shaded region.
2. Shade the region of points (c, d) such that $c \geq a$ and $(d \geq b)$.

The winner is the player who forces the last move. In the example shown below, the players have chosen the points $(1, 2)$ and $(3, 0)$.



Questions:

- Must the game end? or is it possible to have a game that will continue indefinitely? Is this true even if we use an n -dimensional playing board, where $n > 2$? And if so, why?
- Is there a way to count the number of moves remaining, even when there are infinitely many moves?

We answer these questions at the end of Chapter 1.

A card trick

Take twelve cards. Ask a friend to choose one, to look at it without showing it to you, then to shuffle them thoroughly. Arrange the cards on a table face up, in rows of three. Ask your friend what column the card is in; call that number α .

Now collect the cards, making sure they remain in the same order as they were when you dealt them. Arrange them on a table face up again, in rows of four. It is essential that you maintain the same order; the first card you placed on the table in rows of three must be the first

card you place on the table in rows of four; likewise the last card must remain last. The only difference is where it lies on the table. Ask your friend again what column the card is in; call that number β .

In your head, compute $x = 4\alpha - 3\beta$. If x does not lie between 1 and 12 inclusive, add or subtract 12 until it is. Starting with the first card, and following the order in which you laid the cards on the table, count to the x th card. This will be the card your friend chose.

Mastering this trick takes only a little practice. *Understanding* it requires quite a lot of background! We get to it in Chapter 6.

Internet commerce

Let's go shopping!!! This being the modern age of excessive convenience, *let's go shopping online!!!* Before the online company sends you your product, however, they'll want payment. This requires you to submit some sensitive information, namely, your credit card number. Once you submit that number, it will bounce happily around a few computers on its way to the company's server. Some of those computers might be in foreign countries. (It's quite possible. Don't ask.) Any one of those machines could have a snooper. How can you communicate the information in *securely*?

The solution is *public-key cryptography*. The bank's computer tells your computer how to send it a message. It supplies a special number used to encrypt the message, called an *encryption key*. Since the bank broadcasts this in the clear over the internet, anyone in the world can see it. What's more, anyone in the world can look up the method used to decrypt the message.

You might wonder, *How on earth is this secure?!?* Public-key cryptography works because there's the *decryption key* remains with the company, hopefully secret. Secret? Whew! ...or so you think. A snooper could reverse-engineer this key using a "simple" mathematical procedure that you learned in grade school: factoring an integer into primes, like, say, $21 = 3 \cdot 7$.

How on earth is this secure?!? Although the procedure is "simple", the size of the integers in use now is about 40 digits. Believe it or not, even a 40 digit integer takes even a computer far too long to factor! So your internet commerce is completely safe. For now.

Factorization

How can we factor polynomials like $p(x) = x^6 + 7x^5 + 19x^4 + 27x^3 + 26x^2 + 20x + 8$? There are a number of ways to do it, but the most efficient ways involve *modular arithmetic*. We discuss the theory of modular arithmetic later in the course, but for now the general principle will do: pretend that the only numbers we can use are those on a clock that runs from 1 to 51. As with the twelve-hour clock, when we hit the integer 52, we reset to 1; when we hit the integer 53, we reset to 2; and in general for any number that does not lie between 1 and 51, we divide by 51 and take the remainder. For example,

$$20 \cdot 3 + 8 = 68 \rightsquigarrow 17.$$

How does this help us factor? When looking for factors of the polynomial p , we can simplify multiplication by working in this modular arithmetic. This makes it easy for us to reject many possible factorizations before we start. In addition, the set $\{1, 2, \dots, 51\}$ has many interesting properties under modular arithmetic that we can exploit further.

Conclusion

Abstract algebra is a theoretical course: we wonder more about *why things are true* than about *how we can do things*. Algebraists can at times be concerned more with elegance and beauty than applicability and efficiency. You may be tempted on many occasions to ask yourself the point of all this abstraction and theory. *Who needs this stuff?*

Keep the examples above in mind; they show that algebra is not only useful, but necessary. Its applications have been profound and broad. Eventually you will see how algebra addresses the problems above; for now, you can only start to imagine.

The class “begins” here. Wipe your mind clean: unless it says otherwise here or in the following pages, everything you’ve learned until now is suspect, and cannot be used to explain anything. You should adopt the Cartesian philosophy of doubt.⁵

⁵Named after the mathematician and philosopher René Descartes, who inaugurated modern philosophy and claimed to have spent a moment wondering whether he even existed. *Cogito, ergo sum* and all that.

Part I

Integers and Monoids

Chapter 1:

From integers to monoids

Algebra was created to solve problems. Like other branches of mathematics, it started off solving very applied problems of a certain type; that is, polynomial equations. When studying algebra the last few years, you have focused on techniques necessary for solving the simplest examples of polynomial equations.

These techniques do not scale well to larger problems. Because of this, algebraists typically take a different turn, one that develops not just techniques, but structures and viewpoints that can be used to solve a vast array of problems, many of which are surprisingly different.

This chapter serves two purposes. First, we re-present ideas you have seen before, but state them in fairly precise terms, which we will then use repeatedly, and require you to use, so as to encourage you to reason with precise meanings of words. This is motivated by a desire for clarity and reproducibility; too often, people speak vaguely to each other, and words contain different meanings for different people.

On the other hand, we also try to introduce some very important algebraic ideas, but intuitively. We will use very concrete examples. True, these examples are probably not as concrete as you might like, but believe me when I tell you that the examples I will use are more concrete than the usual presentation. One goal is to get you to use these examples when thinking about the more general ideas later on. It will be important not only that you reproduce what you read here, but that you explore and play with the ideas and examples, specializing or generalizing them as needed to attack new problems.

Success in this course will require you to balance these inductive and deductive approaches.

1.1: Foundations

This chapter focuses on two familiar objects of study: the integers and the monomials. They share a number of important parallels that lay the foundation for the first algebraic structure that we will study. Before we investigate that in detail, let's turn to some general tools of mathematics that you should have seen before now.

Sets

The most fundamental object in mathematics is the **set**. Sets can possess a property called **inclusion** when all the elements of one set are also members of the other. More commonly, people say that the set A is a **subset** of the set B if every element of A is also an element of B . If A is a subset of B but not equal to B , we say that A is a **proper subset** of B . All sets have the **empty set** \emptyset as a subset.

Notation 1.1. If A is a subset of B , we write $A \subseteq B$. If A is a proper subset, we can still write $A \subsetneq B$, but if we want to emphasize that they are not equal, we write $A \subsetneq B$.

You should recognize these sets:

- the **positive integers**, $\mathbb{N}^+ = \{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$, also called the **counting numbers**, and
- the **integers**, $\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, which extend \mathbb{N}^+ to “complete” subtraction.

You are already familiar with the intuitive motivation for these numbers and also how they are applied, so we won't waste time rehashing that. Instead, let's spend time re-presenting some basic ideas of sets, especially the integers.

Notation 1.2. Notice that both $\mathbb{N} \subseteq \mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{N} \subsetneq \mathbb{Z}$ are true.

We can put sets together in several ways.

Definition 1.3. Let S and T be two sets. The **Cartesian product** of S and T is the set of ordered pairs

$$S \times T = \{(s, t) : s \in S, t \in T\}.$$

The **union** of S and T is the set

$$S \cup T = \{x : x \in S \text{ or } x \in T\},$$

the **intersection** of S and T is the set

$$S \cap T = \{x : x \in S \text{ and } x \in T\},$$

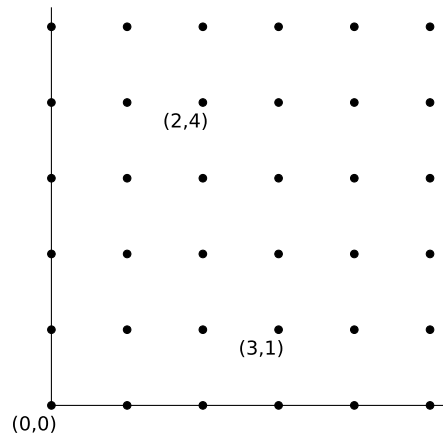
and the **difference** of S and T is the set

$$S \setminus T = \{x : x \in S \text{ and } x \notin T\}.$$

Example 1.4. Suppose $S = \{a, b\}$ and $T = \{x + 1, y - 1\}$. By definition,

$$S \times T = \{(a, x + 1), (a, y - 1), (b, x + 1), (b, y - 1)\}.$$

Example 1.5. If we let $S = T = \mathbb{N}$, then $S \times T = \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$, the set of all ordered pairs whose entries are natural numbers. We can visualize this as a **lattice**, where points must have integer co-ordinates:



Let $\mathcal{B} = \{S, T, Z\}$ where

- S is the set of positive integers,
- T is the set of negative integers, and
- $Z = \{0\}$.

The elements of \mathcal{B} are **disjoint** sets, by which we mean that they have nothing in common. In addition, the elements of \mathcal{B} **cover** \mathbb{Z} , by which we mean that their union produces the entire set of integers. This phenomenon, where a set can be described the union of smaller, disjoint sets, is important enough to highlight with a definition.

Definition 1.6. Suppose that A is a set and \mathcal{B} is a family of subsets of A , called **classes**. We say that \mathcal{B} is a **partition** of A if

- the classes **cover** A : that is, $A = \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{B}} B$; and
- distinct classes are disjoint: that is, if $B_1, B_2 \in \mathcal{B}$ are distinct ($B_1 \neq B_2$), then $B_1 \cap B_2 = \emptyset$.

The next section will introduce a very important kind of partition.

Relations

We often want to describe a relationship between two elements of two or more sets. It turns out that this relationship is also a set. Defining it this way can seem unnatural at first, but in the long run, the benefits far outweigh the costs.

Definition 1.7. Any subset of $S \times T$ is **relation on the sets S and T** . A **function** is any relation f such that $(a, b) \in f$ implies $(a, c) \notin f$ for any $c \neq b$. An **equivalence relation on S** is a subset R of $S \times S$ that satisfies the properties

- reflexive:* for all $a \in S$, $(a, a) \in R$;
- symmetric:* for all $a, b \in S$, if $(a, b) \in R$ then $(b, a) \in R$; and
- transitive:* for all $a, b, c \in S$, if $(a, b) \in R$ and $(b, c) \in R$ then $(a, c) \in R$.

Notation 1.8. Even though relations and functions are sets, we usually write them in the manner to which you are accustomed.

- We typically denote relations that are not functions by symbols such as $<$ or \subseteq . If we want a generic symbol for a relation, we usually write \sim .
- If \sim is a relation, and we want to say that a and b are members of the relation, we write not $(a, b) \in \sim$, but $a \sim b$, instead. For example, in a moment we will discuss the subset relation \subseteq , and we always write $a \subseteq b$ instead of “ $(a, b) \in \subseteq$ ”.
- We typically denote functions by letters, typically f , g , or h , or sometimes the Greek letters, η , φ , ψ , or μ . Instead of writing $f \subseteq S \times T$, we write $f : S \rightarrow T$. If f is a function and $(a, b) \in f$, we write $f(a) = b$.
- The definition and notation of relations and sets imply that we can write $a \sim b$ and $a \sim c$ for a relation \sim , but we cannot write $f(a) = b$ and $f(a) = c$ for a function f .

Example 1.9. Define a relation \sim on \mathbb{Z} in the following way. We say that $a \sim b$ if $ab \in \mathbb{N}$. Is this an equivalence relation?

Reflexive? Let $a \in \mathbb{Z}$. By properties of arithmetic, $a^2 \in \mathbb{N}$. By definition, $a \sim a$, and the relation is reflexive.

Symmetric? Let $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Assume that $a \sim b$; by definition, $ab \in \mathbb{N}$. By the commutative property of arithmetic, $ba \in \mathbb{N}$ also, so $b \sim a$, and the relation is reflexive.

Transitive? Let $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$. Assume that $a \sim b$ and $b \sim c$. By definition, $ab \in \mathbb{N}$ and $bc \in \mathbb{N}$. I could argue that $ac \in \mathbb{N}$ using the trick

$$ac = \frac{(ab)(bc)}{b^2},$$

and pointing out that ab , bc , and b^2 are all natural, which suggests that ac is also natural. However, this argument contains a fatal flaw. Do you see it?

It lies in the fact that we don't know whether $b = 0$. If $b \neq 0$, then the argument above works just fine, but if $b = 0$, then we encounter division by 0, which you surely know is not allowed! (If you're not sure *why* it is not allowed, fret not. We explain this in a moment.)

This apparent failure should not discourage you; in fact, it gives us the answer to our original question. We asked if \sim was an equivalence relation. In fact, *it is not*, and what's more, it illustrates an important principle of mathematical study. Failures like this should prompt you to explore whether you've found an unexpected avenue to answer a question. In this case, the fact that $a \cdot 0 = 0 \in \mathbb{N}$ for any $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ implies that $1 \sim 0$ and $-1 \sim 0$. However, $1 \not\sim -1$! The relation is *not* transitive, so it *cannot* be an equivalence relation!

Binary operations

Another important relation is defined by an operation.

Definition 1.10. Let S and T be sets. An **binary operation from S to T** is a function $f : S \times S \rightarrow T$. If $S = T$, we say that f is a binary operation **on S** . A binary operation f on S is **closed** if $f(a, b)$ is defined for all $a, b \in S$.

Example 1.11. Addition of the natural numbers is a function, $+$: $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$; the sentence, $2 + 3 = 5$ can be thought of as $+(2, 3) = 5$. Hence, addition is a binary operation on \mathbb{N} . Addition is defined for all natural numbers, so it is closed.

Subtraction of natural numbers can be viewed as a function, as well: $-$: $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$. However, while subtraction is a binary operation, it is not closed, since it is not “on \mathbb{N} ”: the range (\mathbb{Z}) is not the same as the domain (\mathbb{N}). This is the reason we need the integers: they “close” subtraction of natural numbers.

In each set described above, you can perform arithmetic: add, subtract, multiply, and (in most cases) divide. We need to make the meaning of these operations precise.⁶

Addition of positive integers is defined in the usual way: it counts the number of objects in the union of two sets with no common element. To obtain the integers \mathbb{Z} , we extend \mathbb{N}^+ with two kinds of new objects.

- 0 is an object such that $a + 0 = a$ for all $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$ (the *additive identity*). This models the union of a set of a objects and an empty set.

⁶We will not make the meanings as precise as possible; at this level, some things are better left to intuition. For example, I will write later, “If I can remove a set with b objects from [a set with a objects]...” What does this mean? We will not define this, but leave it to your intuition.

- For any $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, we define its *additive inverse*, $-a$, as an object with the property that $a + (-a) = 0$. This models *removing* a objects from a set of a objects, so that an empty set remains.

Since $0 + 0 = 0$, we are comfortable deciding that $-0 = 0$. To add with negative integers, let $a, b \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and consider $a + (-b)$:

- If $a = b$, then substitution implies that $a + (-b) = b + (-b) = 0$.
- Otherwise, let A be any set with a objects.
 - If I can remove a set with b objects from A , and have at least one object left over, let $c \in \mathbb{N}^+$ be the number of objects left over; then we define $a + (-b) = c$.
 - If I *cannot* remove a set with b objects from A , then let $c \in \mathbb{N}^+$ be the smallest number of objects I would need to add to A so that I could remove b objects. This satisfies the equation $a + c = b$; we then define $a + (-b) = -c$.

For multiplication, let $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and $b \in \mathbb{Z}$.

- $0 \cdot b = 0$ and $b \cdot 0 = 0$;
- $a \cdot b$ is the result of adding a copies of b , or

$$\underbrace{(((b + b) + b) + \cdots b)}_a;$$

and

- $(-a) \cdot b = -(a \cdot b)$.

We won't bother with a proof, but we assert that such an addition and multiplication are defined for all integers, and satisfy the following properties:

- $a + b = b + a$ and $ab = ba$ for all $a, b \in \mathbb{N}^+$ (the *commutative property*).
- $a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$ and $(ab)c = a(bc)$ for all $a, b, c \in \mathbb{N}^+$ (the *associative property*).
- $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ for all $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ (the *distributive property*).

Notation 1.12. For convenience, we usually write $a - b$ instead of $a + (-b)$.

We have not yet talked about the additive inverses of additive inverses. Suppose $b \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$; by definition, b is an additive inverse of some $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, $a + b = 0$, and $b = -a$. Since we want addition to satisfy the commutative property, we *must* have $b + a = 0$, which suggests that we can think of a as the additive inverse of b , as well! That is, $-b = a$. Written another way, $-(-a) = a$. This also allows us to define the **absolute value** of an integer,

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a, & a \in \mathbb{N}, \\ -a, & a \notin \mathbb{N}. \end{cases}$$

Orderings

We have said nothing about the “ordering” of the natural numbers; that is, we do not “know” yet whether 1 comes before 2, or vice versa. However, our definition of adding negatives has imposed a natural ordering.

Definition 1.13. For any two elements $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$, we say that:

- $a \leq b$ if $b - a \in \mathbb{N}$;
- $a > b$ if $b - a \notin \mathbb{N}$;
- $a < b$ if $b - a \in \mathbb{N}^+$;
- $a \geq b$ if $b - a \notin \mathbb{N}^+$.

So $3 < 5$ because $5 - 3 \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Notice how the negations work: the negation of $<$ is *not* $>$.

Remark 1.14. Do not yet assume certain “natural” properties of these orderings. For example, it is true that if $a \leq b$, then either $a < b$ or $a = b$. But why? You can reason to it from the definitions given here, so you should do so.

More importantly, you cannot yet assume that if $a \leq b$, then $a + c \leq b + c$. You can reason to this property from the definitions, and you will do so in the exercises.

Some orderings enjoy special properties.

Definition 1.15. Let S be any set. A **linear ordering** on S is a relation \sim where for any $a, b \in S$ one of the following holds:

$$a \sim b, a = b, \text{ or } b \sim a.$$

Suppose we define a relation on the subsets of a set S by inclusion; that is, $A \sim B$ if and only if $A \subseteq B$. This relation is *not* a linear ordering, since

$$\{a, b\} \not\subseteq \{c, d\}, \{a, b\} \not\supseteq \{c, d\}, \text{ and } \{c, d\} \not\subseteq \{a, b\}.$$

By contrast, the orderings of \mathbb{Z} are linear.

Theorem 1.16. The relations $<$, $>$, \leq , and \geq are linear orderings of \mathbb{Z} .

Our “proof” relies on some unspoken assumptions: in particular, the arithmetic on \mathbb{Z} that we described before. Try to identify where these assumptions are used, because when you write your own proofs, you have to ask yourself constantly: Where am I using unspoken assumptions? In such places, either the assertion must be something accepted by the audience,⁷ or you have to cite a reference your audience accepts, or you have to prove it explicitly. It’s beyond the scope of this course to discuss these assumptions in detail, but you should at least try to find them.

Proof. We show that $<$ is linear; the rest are proved similarly.

Let $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Subtraction is closed for \mathbb{Z} , so $b - a \in \mathbb{Z}$. By definition, $\mathbb{Z} = \mathbb{N}^+ \cup \{0\} \cup \{-1, -2, \dots\}$. Since $b - a$ must be in one of those three subsets, let’s consider each possibility.

- If $b - a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then $a < b$.
- If $b - a = 0$, then recall that our definition of subtraction was that $b - a = b + (-a)$. Since $b + (-b) = 0$, reasoning on the meaning of natural numbers tells us that $-a = -b$, and thus $a = b$.
- Otherwise, $b - a \in \{-1, -2, \dots\}$. By definition, $-(b - a) \in \mathbb{N}^+$. We know that $(b - a) + [-(b - a)] = 0$. It is not hard to show that $(b - a) + (a - b) = 0$, and reasoning on the meaning of natural numbers tells us again that $a - b = -(b - a)$. In other words, and thus $b < a$.

⁷In your case, the *instructor* is the audience.

We have shown that $a < b$, $a = b$, or $b < a$. Since a and b were arbitrary in \mathbb{Z} , $<$ is a linear ordering. \square

It should be easy to see that the orderings and their linear property apply to all subsets of \mathbb{Z} , in particular \mathbb{N}^+ and \mathbb{N} . That said, this relation behaves differently in \mathbb{N} than it does in \mathbb{Z} .

Linear orderings are already special, but some are *extra* special.

Definition 1.17. Let S be a set and \prec a linear ordering on S . We say that \prec is a **well-ordering** if

Every nonempty subset T of S has a **smallest element** a ;
that is, there exists $a \in T$ such that for all $b \in T$, $a \prec b$ or $a = b$.

Example 1.18. The relation $<$ is *not* a well-ordering of \mathbb{Z} , because \mathbb{Z} itself has no smallest element under the ordering.

Why not? Proceed by way of contradiction. Assume that \mathbb{Z} has a smallest element, and call it a . Certainly $a - 1 \in \mathbb{Z}$ also, but

$$(a - 1) - a = -1 \notin \mathbb{N}^+,$$

so $a \not\prec a - 1$. Likewise $a \neq a - 1$. This contradicts the definition of a smallest element, so \mathbb{Z} is not well-ordered by $<$.

We now assume, *without proof*, the following principle.

The relations $<$ and \leq are well-orderings of \mathbb{N} .

That is, any subset of \mathbb{N} , ordered by these orderings, has a smallest element. This may sound obvious, but it is very important, and what is remarkable is that *no one can prove it*.⁸ It is an assumption about the natural numbers. This is why we state it as a principle (or axiom, if you prefer). In the future, if we talk about the well-ordering of \mathbb{N} , we mean the well-ordering $<$.

One consequence of the well-ordering property is the following fact.

Theorem 1.19. Let $a_1 \geq a_2 \geq \dots$ be a nonincreasing sequence of natural numbers. The sequence eventually stabilizes; that is, at some index i , $a_i = a_{i+1} = \dots$.

Proof. Let $T = \{a_1, a_2, \dots\}$. By definition, $T \subseteq \mathbb{N}$. By the well-ordering principle, T has a least element; call it b . Let $i \in \mathbb{N}^+$ such that $a_i = b$. The definition of the sequence tells us that $b = a_i \geq a_{i+1} \geq \dots$. Thus, $b \geq a_{i+k}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Since b is the *smallest* element of T , we know that $a_{i+k} \geq b$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$. We have $b \geq a_{i+k} \geq b$, which is possible only if $b = a_{i+k}$. Thus, $a_i = a_{i+1} = \dots$, as claimed. \square

Another consequence of the well-ordering property is the principle of:

Theorem 1.20 (Mathematical Induction). Let P be a subset of \mathbb{N}^+ . If P satisfies (IB) and (IS) where

(IB) $1 \in P$;

(IS) for every $i \in P$, we know that $i + 1$ is also in P ;

then $P = \mathbb{N}^+$.

⁸You might try to prove the well-ordering of \mathbb{N} using induction. You would in fact succeed, because well-ordering is equivalent to induction: each implies the other.

Claim: Explain precisely why $0 < a$ for any $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, and $0 \leq a$ for any $a \in \mathbb{N}$.

Proof:

1. Let $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$ be arbitrary.
 2. By _____, $a + 0 = a$.
 3. By _____, $0 = -0$.
 4. By _____, $a + (-0) = a$.
 5. By definition of _____, $a - 0 = a$.
 6. By _____, $a - 0 \in \mathbb{N}^+$.
 7. By definition of _____, $0 < a$.
 8. A similar argument tells us that if $a \in \mathbb{N}$, then $0 \leq a$.
-

Figure 1.1. Material for Exercise 1.21

There are several versions of mathematical induction that appear: generalized induction, strong induction, weak induction, etc. We present only this one as a theorem, but we use the others without comment.

Proof. Let $S = \mathbb{N}^+ \setminus P$. We will prove the contrapositive, so assume that $P \neq \mathbb{N}^+$. Thus $S \neq \emptyset$. Note that $S \subseteq \mathbb{N}^+$. By the well-ordering principle, S has a smallest element; call it n .

- If $n = 1$, then $1 \in S$, so $1 \notin P$. Thus P does not satisfy (IB).
- If $n \neq 1$, then $n > 1$ by the properties of arithmetic. Since n is the smallest element of S and $n - 1 < n$, we deduce that $n - 1 \notin S$. Thus $n - 1 \in P$. Let $i = n - 1$; then $i \in P$ and $i + 1 = n \notin P$. Thus P does not satisfy (IS).

We have shown that if $P \neq \mathbb{N}^+$, then P fails to satisfy at least one of (IB) or (IS). This is the contrapositive of the theorem. \square

Induction is an enormously useful tool, and we will make use of it from time to time. You may have seen induction stated differently, and that's okay. There are several kinds of induction which are all equivalent. We use the form given here for convenience.

Exercises.

In this first set of exercises, we assume that you are not terribly familiar with creating and writing proofs, so we provide a few outlines, leaving blanks for you to fill in. As we proceed through the material, we expect you to grow more familiar and comfortable with thinking, so we provide fewer outlines, and in the outlines that we do provide, we require you to fill in the blanks with more than one or two words.

Exercise 1.21.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.1 with the justification.
- (b) Why would someone writing a proof of the claim think to look at $a - 0$?
- (c) Why would that person start with $a + 0$ instead?

Exercise 1.22.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.2 with the justification.
- (b) Why would someone writing a proof of this claim think to look at the values of $a - b$ and $b - a$?

Claim: We can order any subset of \mathbb{Z} linearly by $<$.

Proof:

1. Let $S \subseteq \mathbb{Z}$.
 2. Let $a, b \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$. We consider three cases.
 3. If $a - b \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then by $a < b$ by $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 4. If $a - b = 0$, then simple arithmetic shows that $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 5. Otherwise, $a - b \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$. By definition of opposites, $b - a \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 (a) Then $a < b$ by $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 6. We have shown that we can order a and b linearly. Since a and b were arbitrary in $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, we can order *any* two elements of that set linearly.
-

Figure 1.2. Material for Exercise 1.22

(c) Why is the introduction of S essential, rather than a distraction?

Exercise 1.23. Let $a \in \mathbb{Z}$. Show that:

- (a) $a < a + 1$;
- (b) if $a \in \mathbb{N}$, then $0 \leq a$; and
- (c) if $a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then $1 \leq a$.

Exercise 1.24. Let $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

- (a) Prove that if $a \leq b$, then $a = b$ or $a < b$.
- (b) Prove that if both $a \leq b$ and $b \leq a$, then $a = b$.
- (c) Prove that if $a \leq b$ and $b \leq c$, then $a \leq c$.

Exercise 1.25. Let $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ and assume that $0 < a < b$. Let $d = b - a$. Show that $d < b$.

Exercise 1.26. Let $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ and assume that $a \leq b$. Prove that

- (a) $a + c \leq b + c$;
- (b) if $c \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then $a \leq ac$; and
- (c) if $c \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then $ac \leq bc$.

Note: You may henceforth assume this for *all* the inequalities given in Definition 1.13.

Exercise 1.27. Let $S \subseteq \mathbb{N}$. We know from the well-ordering property that S has a smallest element. Prove that this smallest element is unique.

Exercise 1.28. Show that $>$ is not a well-ordering of \mathbb{N} .

Exercise 1.29. Show that the ordering $<$ of \mathbb{Z} generalizes “naturally” to an ordering $<$ of \mathbb{Q} that is also a linear ordering.

Exercise 1.30. By definition, a function is a relation. Can a function be an equivalence relation?

Exercise 1.31.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.3 with the justification.
- (b) Why would someone writing a proof of the claim think to write that $a_i < a_{i+1}$?
- (c) Why would someone want to look at the smallest element of A ?

Let S be a well-ordered set.

Claim: Every strictly decreasing sequence of elements of S is finite.

Proof:

1. Let $a_1, a_2, \dots \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (a) Assume that the sequence is $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (b) In other words, $a_{i+1} < a_i$ for all $i \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
2. By way of contradiction, suppose the sequence is $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (a) Let $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots\}$.
 - (b) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, A has a smallest element. Let's call that smallest element b .
 - (c) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $b = a_i$ for some $i \in \mathbb{N}^+$.
 - (d) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $a_{i+1} < a_i$.
 - (e) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $a_{i+1} \in A$.
 - (f) This contradicts the choice of b as the $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
3. The assumption that the sequence is $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ is therefore not consistent with the assumption that the sequence is $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
4. As claimed, then, $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.

Figure 1.3. Material for Exercise 1.31

Definition 1.32. Let $f : S \rightarrow U$ be a mapping of sets.

- We say that f is **one-to-one** if for every $a, b \in S$ where $f(a) = f(b)$, we have $a = b$.
- We say that f is **onto** if for every $x \in U$, there exists $a \in S$ such that $f(a) = x$.

Exercise 1.33. Suppose that $f : S \rightarrow U$ is a one-to-one, onto function. Let $g : U \rightarrow S$ by

$$g(u) = s \iff f(s) = u.$$

- (a) Show that g is also a one-to-one, onto function.
- (b) Show that g *undoes* f , in the sense that for any $s \in S$, we have $g(f(s)) = s$.

This justifies the notation of an **inverse function**; if two functions f and g satisfy the relationship of Exercise 1.33, then each is the inverse function of the other, and we write $g = f^{-1}$ and $f = g^{-1}$. Notice how this implies that $f = (f^{-1})^{-1}$.

1.2: Division

Before looking at algebraic objects, we need one more property of the integers.

The Division Theorem

The last “arithmetic operation” that you know about is division, but this operation is... “interesting”.

Theorem 1.34 (The Division Theorem for Integers). Let $n, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $d \neq 0$. There exist unique $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $r \in \mathbb{Z}$ satisfying (D1) and (D2) where

$$(D1) \quad n = qd + r;$$

$$(D2) \quad 0 \leq r < |d|.$$

One implication of this theorem is that division *is not an operation on \mathbb{Z}* ! An operation on \mathbb{Z} is a relation $f : \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$, but the quotient and remainder imply that division is a relation of the form $\div : (\mathbb{Z} \times (\mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\})) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$. That is not a binary operation *on \mathbb{Z}* . We explore this further in a moment, but for now let's turn to a proof of the theorem.

Proof. We consider two cases: $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$, and $d \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$. First we consider $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$; by definition of absolute value, $|d| = d$. We must show two things: first, that q and r exist; second, that r is unique.

Existence of q and r : First we show the existence of q and r that satisfy (D1). Let $S = \{n - qd : q \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ and $M = S \cap \mathbb{N}$. You will show in Exercise 1.49 that M is non-empty. By the well-ordering of \mathbb{N} , M has a smallest element; call it r . By definition of S , there exists $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $n - qd = r$. Properties of arithmetic imply that $n = qd + r$.

Does r satisfy (D2)? By way of contradiction, assume that it does not; then $|d| \leq r$. We had assumed that $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$, so Exercises 1.21 and 1.25 implies that $0 \leq r - d < r$. Rewrite property (D1) using properties of arithmetic:

$$\begin{aligned} n &= qd + r \\ &= qd + d + (r - d) \\ &= (q + 1)d + (r - d). \end{aligned}$$

Rewrite this as $r - d = n - (q + 1)d$, which shows that $r - d \in S$. Recall $0 \leq r - d$; by definition, $r - d \in \mathbb{N}$. We have $r - d \in S$ and $r - d \in \mathbb{N}$, so $r - d \in S \cap \mathbb{N} = M$. But recall that $r - d < r$, which contradicts the choice of r as the *smallest* element of M . This contradiction implies that r satisfies (D2).

Hence $n = qd + r$ and $0 \leq r < d$; q and r satisfy (D1) and (D2).

Uniqueness of q and r : Suppose that there exist $q', r' \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $n = q'd + r'$ and $0 \leq r' < d$. By definition of S , $r' = n - q'd \in S$; by assumption, $r' \in \mathbb{N}$, so $r' \in S \cap \mathbb{N} = M$. We chose r to be minimal in M , so $0 \leq r \leq r' < d$. By substitution,

$$\begin{aligned} r' - r &= (n - q'd) - (n - qd) \\ &= (q - q')d. \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, $r \leq r'$ implies that $r' - r \in \mathbb{N}$, so by substitution, $(q - q')d \in \mathbb{N}$. Similarly, $0 \leq r \leq r'$ implies that $0 \leq r' - r \leq r'$. By substitution, $0 \leq (q - q')d \leq r'$. Since $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$, it must be that $q - q' \in \mathbb{N}$ also (repeated addition of a negative giving a negative), so $0 \leq q - q'$. If $0 \neq q - q'$, then $1 \leq q - q'$. By Exercise 1.26, $d \leq (q - q')d$. By Exercise 1.24, we see that $d \leq (q - q')d \leq r' < d$. This states that $d < d$, a contradiction. Hence $q - q' = 0$, and by substitution, $r - r' = 0$.

We have shown that if $0 < d$, then there exist unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ satisfying (D1) and (D2). We still have to show that this is true for $d < 0$. In this case, $0 < |d|$, so we can find unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$

such that $n = q|d| + r$ and $0 \leq r < |d|$. By properties of arithmetic, $q|d| = q(-d) = (-q)d$, so $n = (-q)d + r$. \square

Definition 1.35 (terms associated with division). Let $n, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ and suppose that $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ satisfy the Division Theorem. We call n the **dividend**, d the **divisor**, q the **quotient**, and r the **remainder**.

Moreover, if $r = 0$, then $n = qd$. In this case, we say that d **divides** n , and write $d \mid n$. We also say that n is **divisible by** d . If we cannot find such an integer q , then d **does not divide** n , and we write $d \nmid n$.

In the past, you have probably heard of this as “divides evenly.” In advanced mathematics, we typically leave off the word “evenly”.

As noted, division is not a binary operation on \mathbb{Z} , or even on $\mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$. That doesn’t seem especially tidy, so we define a set that allows us to make an operation of division:

- the **rational numbers**, sometimes called the **fractions**, $\mathbb{Q} = \{a/b : a, b \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and } b \neq 0\}$.

We observe the conventions that $a/1 = a$ and $a/b = c/d$ if $ad = bc$. This makes division into a binary operation on $\mathbb{Q} \setminus \{0\}$, though not on \mathbb{Q} since division by zero remains undefined.

Remark 1.36. Why do we insist that $b \neq 0$? Basically, it doesn’t make sense. The very idea of division means that if $a/b = c$, then $a = bc$. So, let $a/0 = c$. In that case, $a = 0c$. This is true only if $a = 0$, so we can’t have $b = 0$. On the other hand, this reasoning doesn’t apply to $0/0$, so what about allowing that to be in \mathbb{Q} ? Actually, that offends our notion of an operation! Why? because if we put $0/0 \in \mathbb{Q}$, it is not hard to show that both $0/0 = 1$ and $0/0 = 2$, which would imply that $1 = 2$!

We have built a chain of sets $\mathbb{N}^+ \subsetneq \mathbb{N} \subsetneq \mathbb{Z} \subsetneq \mathbb{Q}$, extending each set with some useful elements. Even this last extension of this still doesn’t complete arithmetic, since the fundamental *Pythagorean Theorem* isn’t closed in \mathbb{Q} ! Take a right triangle with two legs, each of length 1; the hypotenuse must have length $\sqrt{2}$. As we show later in the course, *this number is not rational!* That means we cannot compute all measurements along a line using \mathbb{Q} alone. This motivates a definition to remedy the situation:

- the **real numbers** contain a number for every possible measurement of distance along a line.⁹

We now have

$$\mathbb{N}^+ \subsetneq \mathbb{N} \subsetneq \mathbb{Z} \subsetneq \mathbb{Q} \subsetneq \mathbb{R}.$$

In the exercises, you will generalize the ordering $<$ to the set \mathbb{Q} . As for an ordering on \mathbb{R} , we leave that to a class in analysis, but you can treat it as you have in the past.

Do we need anything else? Indeed, we do: before long, we will see that even these sets are insufficient for algebra.

Equivalence classes

⁹Speaking precisely, \mathbb{R} is the set of limits of “nice sequences” of rational numbers. By “nice”, we mean that the elements of the sequence eventually grow closer together than any rational number. The technical term for this is a **Cauchy sequence**. For more on this, see any textbook on real analysis.

It turns out that equivalence relations partition a set! We will prove this in a moment, but we should look at a concrete example first.

Normally, we think of the division of n by d as dividing a set of n objects into q groups, where each group contains d elements, and r elements are left over. For example, $n = 23$ apples divided among $d = 6$ bags gives $q = 3$ apples per bag and $r = 5$ apples left over.

Another way to look at division by d is that it divides \mathbb{Z} into d sets of integers. Each integer falls into a set according to its remainder after division. An illustration using $n = 4$:

\mathbb{Z} :	...	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	...
		↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	
division by 4:	...	2	3	0	1	2	3	0	1	2	...

Here \mathbb{Z} is divided into four sets

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= \{\dots, -4, 0, 4, 8, \dots\} \\
 B &= \{\dots, -3, 1, 5, 9, \dots\} \\
 C &= \{\dots, -2, 2, 6, 10, \dots\} \\
 D &= \{\dots, -1, 3, 7, 11, \dots\}.
 \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

Observe two important facts:

- the sets A , B , C , and D cover \mathbb{Z} ; that is,

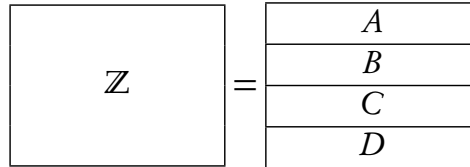
$$\mathbb{Z} = A \cup B \cup C \cup D;$$

and

- the sets A , B , C , and D are *disjoint*; that is,

$$A \cap B = A \cap C = A \cap D = B \cap C = B \cap D = C \cap D = \emptyset.$$

We can diagram this:



This should remind you of a partition! (Definition 1.6)

Example 1.37. Let $\mathcal{B} = \{A, B, C, D\}$ where A , B , C , and D are defined as in (1). Since the elements of \mathcal{B} are disjoint, and they cover \mathbb{Z} , we conclude that \mathcal{B} is a partition of \mathbb{Z} .

A more subtle property is at work here: division has actually produced for us an equivalence relation on the integers.

Theorem 1.38. Let $d \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$, and define a relation \equiv_d in the following way: for any $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, we say that $m \equiv_d n$ if and only if they have the same remainder after division by d . This is an equivalence relation.

Proof. We have to prove that \equiv_d is reflexive, symmetric, and transitive.

Reflexive? Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. The Division Theorem tells us that the remainder of division of n by d is unique, so $n \equiv_d n$.

Symmetric? Let $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and assume that $m \equiv_d n$. This tells us that m and n have the same remainder after division by d . It obviously doesn't matter whether we state m first or n first; we can just as well say that n and m have the same remainder after division by d . That is, $n \equiv_d m$.

Transitive? Let $\ell, m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, and assume that $\ell \equiv_d m$ and $m \equiv_d n$. This tells us that ℓ and m have the same remainder after division by d , and m and n have the same remainder after division by d . The Division Theorem tells us that the remainder of division of n by d is unique, so ℓ and n have the same remainder after division by d . That is, $\ell \equiv_d n$. \square

We have seen that division induces both a partition and an equivalence relation. Do equivalence relations always coincide with partitions? Surprisingly, yes!

Theorem 1.39. An equivalence relation partitions a set, and any partition of a set defines an equivalence relation.

Actually, it isn't so surprising if you understand the proof, or even if you just think about the meaning of an equivalence relation. The reflexive property implies that every element is in relation with itself, and the other two properties help ensure that no element can be related to two elements that are not themselves related. The proof provides some detail.

Proof. Does any partition of any set define an equivalence relation? Let S be a set, and \mathcal{B} a partition of S . Define a relation \sim on S in the following way: $x \sim y$ if and only if x and y are in the same element of \mathcal{B} . That is, if $X \in \mathcal{B}$ is the set such that $x \in X$, then $y \in X$ as well.

We claim that \sim is an equivalence relation. It is reflexive because a partition covers the set; that is, $S = \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{B}} B$, so for any $x \in S$, we can find $B \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in B$, which means the statement that “ x is in the same element of \mathcal{B} as itself” ($x \sim x$) actually makes sense. The relation is symmetric because $x \sim y$ means that x and y are in the same element of \mathcal{B} , which is equivalent to saying that y and x are in the same element of \mathcal{B} ; after all, set membership is not affected by which element we list first. So, if $x \sim y$, then $y \sim x$. Finally, the relation is transitive because distinct elements of a partition are disjoint. Let $x, y, z \in S$, and assume $x \sim y$ and $y \sim z$. Choose $X, Z \in \mathcal{B}$ such that $x \in X$ and $z \in Z$. The symmetric property tells us that $z \sim y$, and the definition of the relation implies that $y \in X$ and $y \in Z$. The fact that they share a common element tells us that X and Z are not disjoint ($X \cap Z \neq \emptyset$). By the definition of a partition, X and Z are not distinct.

Does an equivalence relation partition a set? Let S be a set, and \sim an equivalence relation on S . If S is empty, the claim is vacuously true, so assume S is non-empty. Let $x \in S$, and define C_x to be the set of all elements of S that are related to x ; that is, $C_x = \{s \in S : x \sim s\}$. Notice that $C_x \neq \emptyset$, since the reflexive property of an equivalence relation guarantees that $x \sim x$, which implies that $x \in C_x$.

Definition 1.40. We call C_x the **equivalence class of x in S** .

Let \mathcal{B} be the set of all equivalence classes of elements of x ; that is, $\mathcal{B} = \{C_x : x \in S\}$. We have already seen that every $x \in S$ appears in its own equivalence class, so \mathcal{B} covers S . Are distinct equivalence classes also disjoint?

Let $X, Y \in \mathcal{B}$ and assume that $X \cap Y \neq \emptyset$; this means that we can choose $z \in X \cap Y$. By definition, $X = C_x$ and $Y = C_y$ for some $x, y \in S$. By definition of $X = C_x$ and

$Y = C_y$, we know that $x \sim z$ and $y \sim z$. Now let $w \in X$ be arbitrary; by definition, $x \sim w$; by the symmetric property of an equivalence relation, $w \sim x$ and $z \sim y$; by the transitive property of an equivalence relation, $w \sim z$, and by the same reasoning, $w \sim y$. Since w was an arbitrary element of X , every element of X is related to y ; in other words, every element of X is in $C_y = Y$, so $X \subseteq Y$.

A similar argument shows that $X \supseteq Y$. By definition of set equality, $X = Y$. We took two arbitrary equivalence classes of S , and showed that if they were not disjoint, then they were not distinct. The contrapositive states that if they are distinct, then they are disjoint. Since the elements of \mathcal{B} are equivalence classes of S , we conclude that distinct elements of \mathcal{B} are disjoint. They also cover S , so as claimed, \mathcal{B} is a partition of S induced by the equivalence relation. \square

Exercises.

Exercise 1.41. Identify the quotient and remainder when dividing:

- (a) 10 by -5 ;
- (b) -5 by 10;
- (c) -10 by -4 .

Exercise 1.42. Prove that if $a \in \mathbb{Z}$, $b \in \mathbb{N}^+$, and $a \mid b$, then $a \leq b$.

Exercise 1.43. Show that $a \leq |a|$ for all $a \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Exercise 1.44. Show that divisibility is transitive for the integers; that is, if $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$, $a \mid b$, and $b \mid c$, then $a \mid c$.

Exercise 1.45. Extend the definition of $<$ so that we can order rational numbers. That is, find a criterion on $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ that tells us when $a/b < c/d$.

Definition 1.46. We define lcm, the **least common multiple** of two integers, as

$$\text{lcm}(a, b) = \min \{n \in \mathbb{N}^+ : a \mid n \text{ and } b \mid n\}.$$

This is a precise definition of the least common multiple that you should already be familiar with: it's the smallest (min) positive ($n \in \mathbb{N}^+$) multiple of a and b ($a \mid n$, and $b \mid n$).

Exercise 1.47.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.4 with the justification.
- (b) One part of the proof claims that “A similar argument shows that $b \mid r$.” State this argument in detail.

Exercise 1.48. Define a relation \equiv on \mathbb{Q} , the set of real numbers, in the following way:

$$a \equiv b \text{ if and only if } a - b \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

- (a) Give some examples of rational numbers that are related. Include examples where a and b are not themselves integers.

Let $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Claim: If a and b both divide c , then $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ also divides c .

Proof:

1. Let $d = \text{lcm}(a, b)$. By _____, we can choose q, r such that $c = qd + r$ and $0 \leq r < d$.
2. By definition of _____, both a and b divide d .
3. By definition of _____, we can find $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $c = ax$ and $d = ay$.
4. By _____, $ax = q(ay) + r$.
5. By _____, $r = a(x - qy)$.
6. By definition of _____, $a \mid r$. A similar argument shows that $b \mid r$.
7. We have shown that a and b divide r . Recall that $0 \leq r < d$, and _____. By definition of lcm , $r = 0$.
8. By _____, $c = qd = q\text{lcm}(a, b)$.
9. By definition of _____, $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ divides c .

Figure 1.4. Material for Exercise 1.47

- (b) Show that that $a \equiv b$ if they have the same *fractional part*. That is, if we write a and b in decimal form, we see exactly the same numbers on the right hand side of the decimal point, in exactly the same order. (You may assume, without proof, that we can write any rational number in decimal form.)
- (c) Is \equiv an equivalence relation?
For any $a \in \mathbb{Q}$, let S_a be the set of all rational numbers b such that $a \equiv b$. We'll call these new sets **classes**.
- (d) Is every $a \in \mathbb{Q}$ an element of some class? Why?
- (e) Show that if $S_a \neq S_b$, then $S_a \cap S_b = \emptyset$.

Exercise 1.49.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.5 with the justification.
- (b) Why would someone writing a proof of the claim think to look at $n - qd$?
- (c) Why would this person want to find a value of q ?

Exercise 1.50. Let X and Y on the lattice $L = \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$. Let's say that addition is performed as with vectors:

$$X + Y = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2),$$

multiplication is performed by this *very odd* definition:

$$X \cdot Y = (x_1y_1 - x_2y_2, x_1y_2 + x_2y_1),$$

and the magnitude of a point is divided by the usual Euclidean metric,

$$\|X\| = \sqrt{x_1^2 + x_2^2}.$$

- (a) Suppose $D = (3, 1)$. Calculate $(c, 0) \cdot D$ for several different values of c . How would you describe the results geometrically?
- (b) With the same value of D , calculate $(0, c) \cdot D$ for several different values of c . How would you describe the results geometrically?

Let $n, d \in \mathbb{Z}$, where $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Define $M = \{n - qd : q \in \mathbb{Z}\}$.

Claim: $M \cap \mathbb{N} \neq \emptyset$.

Proof: We consider two cases.

1. First suppose $n \in \mathbb{N}$.
 - (a) Let $q = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$. By definition of \mathbb{Z} , $q \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(You can reverse-engineer this answer if you look down a little.)
 - (b) By properties of arithmetic, $qd = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (c) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd = n$.
 - (d) By hypothesis, $n \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (e) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd \in \mathbb{Z}$.
2. It's possible that $n \notin \mathbb{N}$, so now let's assume that, instead.
 - (a) Let $q = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$. By definition of \mathbb{Z} , $q \in \mathbb{Z}$.
(Again, you can reverse-engineer this answer if you look down a little.)
 - (b) By substitution, $n - qd = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (c) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd = -n(d - 1)$.
 - (d) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n \notin \mathbb{N}$, but it is in \mathbb{Z} . Hence, $-n \in \mathbb{N}^+$.
 - (e) Also by $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $d \in \mathbb{N}^+$, so arithmetic tells us that $d - 1 \in \mathbb{N}$.
 - (f) Arithmetic now tells us that $-n(d - 1) \in \mathbb{N}$. (pos \times natural = natural)
 - (g) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd \in \mathbb{Z}$.
3. In both cases, we showed that $n - qd \in \mathbb{N}$. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd \in M$.
4. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n - qd \in M \cap \mathbb{N}$.
5. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $M \cap \mathbb{N} \neq \emptyset$.

Figure 1.5. Material for Exercise 1.49

- (c) Suppose $N = (10, 4)$, $D = (3, 1)$, and $R = N - (3, 0) \cdot D$. Show that $\|R\| < \|D\|$.
- (d) Suppose $N = (10, 4)$, $D = (1, 3)$, and $R = N - (3, 3) \cdot D$. Show that $\|R\| < \|D\|$.
- (e) Use the results of (a) and (b) to provide a geometric description of how N , D , and R are related in (c) and (d).
- (f) Suppose $N = (10, 4)$ and $D = (2, 2)$. Find Q such that if $R = N - Q \cdot D$, then $\|R\| < \|D\|$. Try to build on the geometric ideas you gave in (e).
- (g) Show that for any $N, D \in L$ with $D \neq (0, 0)$, you can find $Q, R \in L$ such that $N \cdot D + R$ and $\|R\| < \|D\|$. Again, try to build on the geometric ideas you gave in (e).

1.3: Monomials and monoids

We now move from one set that you may consider to be “arithmetical” to another that you will definitely recognize as “algebraic”. In doing so, we will notice a similarity in the mathematical structure. That similarity will motivate our first steps into modern algebra, with monoids.

Monomials

Let x represent an unknown quantity. The set of “univariate monomials in x ” is

$$\mathbb{M} = \{x^a : a \in \mathbb{N}\}, \quad (2)$$

where x^a , a “monomial”, represents precisely what you’d think: the product of a copies of x . In other words,

$$x^a = \prod_{i=1}^a x = \underbrace{x \cdot x \cdots x}_{n \text{ times}}.$$

We can extend this notion. Let x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n represent unknown quantities. The set of “multivariate monomials in x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n ” is

$$\mathbb{M}_n = \left\{ \prod_{i=1}^m (x_1^{a_{i1}} x_2^{a_{i2}} \cdots x_n^{a_{in}}) : m, a_{ij} \in \mathbb{N} \right\}. \quad (3)$$

(“Univariate” means “one variable”; “multivariate” means “many variables”.) For monomials, we allow neither coefficients nor negative exponents. The definition of \mathbb{M}_n indicates that any of its elements is a “product of products”.

Example 1.51. The following are monomials:

$$x^2, \quad 1 = x^0 = x_1^0 x_2^0 \cdots x_n^0, \quad x^2 y^3 x y^4.$$

Notice from the last product that the variables need not commute under multiplication; that depends on what they represent. This is consistent with the definition of \mathbb{M}_n , each of whose elements is a product of products. We could write $x^2 y^3 x y^4$ in those terms as

$$(x^2 y^3) (x y^4) = \prod_{i=1}^m (x_1^{a_{i1}} x_2^{a_{i2}})$$

with $m = 2$, $a_{11} = 2$, $a_{12} = 3$, $a_{21} = 1$, and $a_{22} = 4$.

The following are not monomials:

$$x^{-1} = \frac{1}{x}, \quad \sqrt{x} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \sqrt[3]{x^2} = x^{\frac{2}{3}}.$$

Similarities between \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{N}

We are interested in similarities between \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{M} . Why? Suppose that we can identify a structure common to the two sets. If we make the obvious properties of this structure precise, we can determine non-obvious properties that must be true about \mathbb{N} , \mathbb{M} , and any other set that adheres to the structure.

*If we can prove a fact about a structure,
then we don’t have to re-prove that fact for all its elements.*

This saves time and increases understanding.

It is harder at first to think about general structures rather than concrete objects, but time, effort, and determination bring agility.

To begin with, what operation(s) should we normally associate with \mathbb{M} ? We normally associate addition and multiplication with the natural numbers, but the monomials are *not* closed under addition. After all, $x^2 + x^4$ is a *polynomial*, not a monomial. On the other hand, $x^2 \cdot x^4$ is

a monomial, and in fact $x^a x^b \in \mathbb{M}$ for any choice of $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. This is true about monomials in any number of variables.

Lemma 1.52. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Both \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_n are closed under multiplication.

Proof for \mathbb{M} . Let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}$. By definition, there exist $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $t = x^a$ and $u = x^b$. By definition of monomial multiplication, we see that

$$tu = x^{a+b}.$$

Since addition is closed in \mathbb{N} , the expression $a + b$ simplifies to a natural number. Call this number c . By substitution, $tu = x^c$. This has the form of a univariate monomial; compare it with the description of a monomial in equation (2). So, $tu \in \mathbb{M}$. Since we chose t and u to be arbitrary elements of \mathbb{M} , and found their product to be an element of \mathbb{M} , we conclude that \mathbb{M} is closed under multiplication. \square

Easy, right? We won't usually state all those steps explicitly, but we want to do so at least once.

What about \mathbb{M}_n ? The lemma claims that multiplication is closed there, too, but we haven't proved that yet. I wanted to separate the two, to show how operations you take for granted in the univariate case don't work so well in the multivariate case. The problem here is that the variables might not commute under multiplication. If we knew that they did, we could write something like,

$$tu = x_1^{a_1+b_1} \dots x_n^{a_n+b_n},$$

so long as the a 's and the b 's were defined correctly. Unfortunately, if we assume that the variables *are* commutative, then we don't prove the statement for everything that we would like. This requires a little more care in developing the argument. Sometimes, it's just a game of notation, as it will be here.

Proof for \mathbb{M}_n . Let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}_n$. By definition, we can write

$$t = \prod_{i=1}^{m_t} (x_1^{a_{i1}} \dots x_n^{a_{in}}) \quad \text{and} \quad u = \prod_{i=1}^{m_u} (x_1^{b_{i1}} \dots x_n^{b_{in}}).$$

(We give subscripts to m_t and m_u because t and u might have a different number of elements in their product. Since m_t and m_u are not the same symbol, it's possible they have a different value.) By substitution,

$$tu = \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m_t} (x_1^{a_{i1}} \dots x_n^{a_{in}}) \right) \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m_u} (x_1^{b_{i1}} \dots x_n^{b_{in}}) \right).$$

Intuitively, you want to declare victory; we've written tu as a product of variables, right? All we see are variables, organized into two products.

Unfortunately, we're not quite there yet. To show that $tu \in \mathbb{M}_n$, we must show that we can write it as *one* product of a list of products, rather than two. This turns out to be as easy as making the symbols do what your head is telling you: two lists of products of variables, placed

side by side, make one list of products of variables. To show that it's one list, we must identify explicitly how many “small products” are in the “big product”. There are m_t in the first, and m_u in the second, which makes $m_t + m_u$ in all. So we know that we should be able to write

$$tu = \prod_{i=1}^{m_t+m_u} (x_1^{c_{i1}} \cdots x_n^{c_{in}}) \quad (4)$$

for appropriate choices of c_{ij} . The hard part now is identifying the correct values of c_{ij} .

In the list of products, the first few products come from t . How many? There are m_t from t . The rest are from u . We can specify this precisely using a piecewise function:

$$c_{ij} = \begin{cases} a_{ij}, & 1 \leq i \leq m_t \\ b_{ij}, & m_t < i. \end{cases}$$

Specifying c_{ij} this way justifies our claim that tu has the form shown in equation (4). That satisfies the requirements of \mathbb{M}_n , so we can say that $tu \in \mathbb{M}_n$. Since t and u were chosen arbitrarily from \mathbb{M}_n , it is closed under multiplication. \square

You can see that life is a little harder when we don't have all the assumptions we would like to make; it's easier to prove that \mathbb{M}_n is closed under multiplication if the variables commute under multiplication; we can simply imitate the proof for \mathbb{M} . You will do this in one of the exercises.

As with the proof for \mathbb{M} , we were somewhat pedantic here; don't expect this level of detail all the time. Pedantry has the benefit that you don't have to read between the lines. That means you don't have to think much, only recall previous facts and apply very basic logic. However, pedantry also makes proofs long and boring. While you could shut down much of your brain while reading a pedantic proof, that would be counterproductive. Ideally, you want to reader to *think* while reading a proof, so shutting down the brain is bad. Thus, a good proof does not recount every basic definition or result for the reader, but requires her to make basic recollections and inferences.

Let's look at two more properties.

Lemma 1.53. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Multiplication in \mathbb{M} satisfies the commutative property. Multiplication in both \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_n satisfies the associative property.

Proof. We show this to be true for \mathbb{M} ; the proof for \mathbb{M}_n we will omit (but it can be done as it was above). Let $t, u, v \in \mathbb{M}$. By definition, there exist $a, b, c \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $t = x^a$, $u = x^b$, and $v = x^c$. By definition of monomial multiplication and by the commutative property of addition in \mathbb{M} , we see that

$$tu = x^{a+b} = x^{b+a} = ut.$$

As t and u were arbitrary, multiplication of univariate monomials is commutative.

By definition of monomial multiplication and by the associative property of addition in \mathbb{N} ,

we see that

$$\begin{aligned} t(uv) &= x^a (x^b x^c) = x^a x^{b+c} \\ &= x^{a+(b+c)} = x^{(a+b)+c} \\ &= x^{a+b} x^c = (tu)v. \end{aligned}$$

□

You might ask yourself, *Do I have to show every step?* That depends on what the reader needs to understand the proof. In the equation above, it is essential to show that the commutative and associative properties of multiplication in \mathbb{M} depend strictly on the commutative and associative properties of addition in \mathbb{N} . Thus, the steps

$$x^{a+b} = x^{b+a} \quad \text{and} \quad x^{a+(b+c)} = x^{(a+b)+c},$$

with the parentheses as indicated, are absolutely crucial, and cannot be omitted from a good proof.¹⁰

Another property the natural numbers have is that of an identity: both additive and multiplicative. Since we associate only multiplication with the monomials, we should check whether they have a multiplicative identity. I hope this one doesn't surprise you!

Lemma 1.54. Both \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_n have $1 = x^0 = x_1^0 x_2^0 \cdots x_n^0$ as a multiplicative identity.

We won't bother proving this one, but leave it to the exercises.

Monoids

There are quite a few other properties that the integers and the monomials share, but the three properties we have mentioned here are already quite interesting, and as such are precisely the ones we want to highlight. This motivates the following definition.

Definition 1.55. Let M be a set, and \circ an operation on M . We say that the pair (M, \circ) is a **monoid** if it satisfies the following properties:

- (closed) for any $x, y \in M$, we have $x \circ y \in M$;
- (associative) for any $x, y, z \in M$, we have $(x \circ y) \circ z = x \circ (y \circ z)$; and
- (identity) there exists an **identity element** $e \in M$ such that for any $x \in M$, we have $e \circ x = x \circ e = x$.

We may also say that M is a **monoid under \circ** .

So far, then, we know the following:

Theorem 1.56. \mathbb{N} is a monoid under addition and multiplication, while \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_n are monoids under multiplication.

¹⁰Of course, a professional mathematician would not even prove these things in a paper, because they are well-known and easy. On the other hand, a good professional mathematician *would* feel compelled to include in a proof steps that include novel and/or difficult information.

Proof. For \mathbb{N} , this is part of its definition. For \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{M}_n , see Lemmas 1.52, 1.53, and 1.54. \square

Generally, we don't write the operation in conjunction with the set; we write the set alone, leaving it to the reader to infer the operation. In some cases, this might lead to ambiguity; after all, both $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ and (\mathbb{N}, \times) are monoids, so which should we prefer? We will prefer $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ as the usual monoid associated with \mathbb{N} . Thus, we can write that \mathbb{N} , \mathbb{M} , and \mathbb{M}_n are examples of monoids: the first under addition, the others under multiplication.

What other mathematical objects are examples of monoids?

Example 1.57. Let $m, n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. You should have seen in linear algebra that the set of matrices with integer entries $\mathbb{Z}^{m \times n}$ satisfies properties that make it a monoid under addition. The set of square matrices with integer entries $\mathbb{Z}^{m \times m}$ satisfies properties that make it a monoid under addition *and* multiplication. That said, your professor almost certainly didn't *call* it a monoid at the time.

Here's an example you probably *haven't* seen before.

Example 1.58. Let S be a set, and let F_S be the set of all functions mapping S to itself, with the proviso that for any $f \in F_S$, $f(s)$ is defined for every $s \in S$. We can show that F_S is a monoid under composition of functions, since

- for any $f, g \in F_S$, we also have $f \circ g \in F_S$, where $f \circ g$ is the function h such that for any $s \in S$,

$$h(s) = (f \circ g)(s) = f(g(s))$$

(notice how important it was that $g(s)$ have a defined value regardless of the value of s);

- for any $f, g, h \in F_S$, we have $(f \circ g) \circ h = f \circ (g \circ h)$, since for any $s \in S$,

$$((f \circ g) \circ h)(s) = (f \circ g)(h(s)) = f(g(h(s)))$$

and

$$(f \circ (g \circ h))(s) = f((g \circ h)(s)) = f(g(h(s)));$$

- if we consider the function $\iota \in F_S$ where $\iota(s) = s$ for all $s \in S$, then for any $f \in F_S$, we have $\iota \circ f = f \circ \iota = f$, since for any $s \in S$,

$$(\iota \circ f)(s) = \iota(f(s)) = f(s)$$

and

$$(f \circ \iota)(s) = f(\iota(s)) = f(s)$$

(we can say that $\iota(f(s)) = f(s)$ because $f(s) \in S$).

Although monoids are useful, they don't capture all the properties that interest us. Not all the properties we found for \mathbb{N} will hold for \mathbb{M} , let alone for all monoids. After all, monoids characterize the properties of a set with respect to *only one* operation. Because of this, they cannot describe properties based on two operations.

For example, the Division Theorem requires *two* operations: multiplication (by the quotient) and addition (of the remainder). So, there is no "Division Theorem for Monoids"; it simply doesn't make sense in the context. If we want to generalize the Division Theorem to other sets, we will need a more specialized structure. We will actually meet one later! (in Section 7.4.)

Here is one useful property that we can prove already. A natural question to ask about monoids is whether the identity of a monoid is unique. It isn't hard to show that it is.

Theorem 1.59. Suppose that M is a monoid, and there exist $e, i \in M$ such that $ex = x$ and $xi = x$ for all $x \in M$. Then $e = i$, so that the identity of a monoid is unique.

“Unique” in mathematics means *exactly one*. To prove uniqueness of an object x , you consider a generic object y that shares all the properties of x , then reason to show that $x = y$. This is not a contradiction, because we didn't assume that $x \neq y$ in the first place; we simply wondered about a generic y . We did the same thing with the Division Theorem (Theorem 1.34 on page 15).

Proof. Suppose that e is a left identity, and i is a right identity. Since i is a right identity, we know that

$$e = ei.$$

Since e is a left identity, we know that

$$ei = i.$$

By substitution,

$$e = i.$$

We chose an arbitrary left identity of M and an arbitrary right identity of M , and showed that they were in fact the same element. Hence left identities are also right identities. This implies in turn that there is only one identity: any identity is both a left identity and a right identity, so the argument above shows that any two identities are in fact identical. \square

Exercises.

Exercise 1.60. Is \mathbb{N} a monoid under:

- (a) subtraction?
- (b) division?

Be sure to explain your answer.

Exercise 1.61. Is \mathbb{Z} a monoid under:

- (a) addition?
- (b) subtraction?
- (c) multiplication?
- (d) division?

Be sure to explain your answer.

Exercise 1.62. Consider the set $B = \{F, T\}$ with the operation \vee where

$$F \vee F = F$$

$$F \vee T = T$$

$$T \vee F = T$$

$$T \vee T = T.$$

This operation is called **Boolean or**.

Is (B, \vee) a monoid? If so, explain how it justifies each property.

Exercise 1.63. Consider the set $B = \{F, T\}$ with the operation \oplus where

$$F \oplus F = F$$

$$F \oplus T = T$$

$$T \oplus F = T$$

$$T \oplus T = F.$$

This operation is called **Boolean exclusive or**, or **xor** for short.

Is (B, \oplus) a monoid? If so, explain how it justifies each property.

Exercise 1.64. Suppose multiplication of x and y commutes. Show that multiplication in \mathbb{M}_n is both closed and associative.

Exercise 1.65.

- (a) Show that $\mathbb{N}[x]$, the ring of polynomials in one variable with integer coefficients, is a monoid under addition.
- (b) Show that $\mathbb{N}[x]$ is also a monoid if the operation is multiplication.
- (c) Explain why we can replace \mathbb{N} by \mathbb{Z} and the argument would remain valid. (*Hint*: think about the *structure* of these sets.)

Exercise 1.66. Recall the lattice L from Exercise 1.50.

- (a) Show that L is a monoid under the addition defined in that exercise.
- (b) Show that L is a monoid under the multiplication defined in that exercise.

Exercise 1.67. Let A be a set of symbols, and L the set of all finite sequences that can be constructed using elements of A . Let \circ represent *concatenation of lists*. For example, $(a, b) \circ (c, d, e, f) = (a, b, c, d, e, f)$. Show that (L, \circ) is a monoid.

Definition 1.68. For any set S , let $P(S)$ denote the set of all subsets of S . We call this the **power set** of S .

Exercise 1.69.

- (a) Suppose $S = \{a, b\}$. Compute $P(S)$, and show that it is a monoid under \cup (union).
- (b) Let S be *any* set. Show that $P(S)$ is a monoid under \cup (union).

Exercise 1.70.

- (a) Suppose $S = \{a, b\}$. Compute $P(S)$, and show that it is a monoid under \cap (intersection).
- (b) Let S be *any* set. Show that $P(S)$ is a monoid under \cap (intersection).

Exercise 1.71.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.6 with the justification.
- (b) Is (\mathbb{N}, lcm) also a monoid? If so, do we have to change anything about the proof? If not, which property fails?

Claim: $(\mathbb{N}^+, \text{lcm})$ is a monoid. Note that the operation here looks unusual: instead of something like $x \circ y$, you're looking at $\text{lcm}(x, y)$.

Proof:

1. First we show closure.
 - (a) Let $a, b \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, and let $c = \text{lcm}(a, b)$.
 - (b) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $c \in \mathbb{N}$.
 - (c) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, \mathbb{N} is closed under lcm .
2. Next, we show the associative property. This is one is a bit tedious...
 - (a) Let $a, b, c \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (b) Let $m = \text{lcm}(a, \text{lcm}(b, c))$, $n = \text{lcm}(\text{lcm}(a, b), c)$, and $\ell = \text{lcm}(b, c)$. By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, we know that $\ell, m, n \in \mathbb{N}$.
 - (c) We claim that $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ divides m .
 - i. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, both a and $\text{lcm}(b, c)$ divide m .
 - ii. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, we can find x such that $m = ax$.
 - iii. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, both b and c divide m .
 - iv. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, we can find y such that $m = by$.
 - v. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, both a and b divide m .
 - vi. By Exercise $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ divides m .
 - (d) Recall that $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ divides m . Both $\text{lcm}(a, b)$ and $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ divide m .
(Both blanks expect the same answer.)
 - (e) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $n \leq m$.
 - (f) A similar argument shows that $m \leq n$; by Exercise $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $m = n$.
 - (g) By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $\text{lcm}(a, \text{lcm}(b, c)) = \text{lcm}(\text{lcm}(a, b), c)$.
 - (h) Since $a, b, c \in \mathbb{N}$ were arbitrary, we have shown that lcm is associative.
3. Now, we show the identity property.
 - (a) Let $a \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (b) Let $\iota = \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
 - (c) By arithmetic, $\text{lcm}(a, \iota) = a$.
 - (d) By definition of $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, ι is the identity of \mathbb{N} under lcm .
4. We have shown that (\mathbb{N}, lcm) satisfies the properties of a monoid.

Figure 1.6. Material for Exercise 1.71

Exercise 1.72. Recall the usual ordering $<$ on \mathbb{M} : $x^a < x^b$ if $a < b$. Show that this is a well-ordering.

Remark 1.73. While we can define a well-ordering on \mathbb{M}_n , it is a much more complicated proposition, which we take up in Section 11.2.

Exercise 1.74. In Exercise 1.44, you showed that divisibility is transitive in the integers.

- (a) Show that divisibility is transitive in *any* monoid; that is, if M is a monoid, $a, b, c \in M$, $a \mid b$, and $b \mid c$, then $a \mid c$.
- (b) In fact, you don't need all the properties of a monoid for divisibility to be transitive! Which properties *do* you need?

1.4: Isomorphism

We've seen that several important sets share the monoid structure. In particular, $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ and (\mathbb{M}, \times) are very similar. Are they in fact identical *as monoids*? If so, the technical word for this is *isomorphism*. How can we determine whether two monoids are isomorphic? We will look for a way to determine whether their operations behave the same way.

Imagine two offices. How would you decide if the offices were equally suitable for a certain job? First, you would need to know what tasks have to be completed, and what materials you need for those tasks. For example, if your job required you to keep books for reference, you would want to find a bookshelf in the office. If it required you to write, you would need a desk, and perhaps a computer. If it required you to communicate with people in other locations, you might need a phone. Having made such a list, you would then want to compare the two offices. If they both had the equipment you needed, you'd think they were both suitable for the job at hand. It wouldn't really matter how the offices satisfied the requirements; if one had a desk by the window, and the other had it on the side opposite the window, that would be okay. If one office lacked a desk, however, it wouldn't be up to the required job.

Deciding whether two sets are isomorphic is really the same idea. First, you decide what structure the sets have, which you want to compare. (So far, we've only studied monoids, so for now, we care only whether the sets have the same monoid structure.) Next, you compare how the sets satisfy those structural properties. If you're looking at finite monoids, an exhaustive comparison might work, but exhaustive methods tend to become exhausting, and don't scale well to large sets. Besides, we deal with infinite sets like \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{M} often enough that we need a non-exhaustive way to compare their structure. Functions turn out to be just the tool we need.

How so? Let S and T be any two sets. Recall that a **function** $f : S \rightarrow T$ is a relation that sends every input $x \in S$ to precisely one value in T , the output $f(x)$. You have probably heard the geometric interpretation of this: f passes the "vertical line test." You might suspect at this point that we are going to generalize the notion of function to something more general, just as we generalized \mathbb{Z} , \mathbb{M} , etc. to monoids. To the contrary; we will *specialize* the notion of a function in a way that tells us important information about a monoid.

Suppose M and N are monoids. If they are isomorphic, their monoid structure is identical, so we ought to be able to build a function that maps elements with a certain behavior in M to elements with the same behavior in N . (Table to table, phone to phone.) What does that mean? Let $x, y, z \in M$ and $a, b, c \in N$. Suppose that $f(x) = a$, $f(y) = b$, $f(z) = c$, and $xy = z$. If M and N have the same structure as monoids, then:

- since $xy = z$,
- we want $ab = c$, or

$$f(x)f(y) = f(z)$$

Substituting xy for z suggests that we want the property

$$f(x)f(y) = f(xy).$$

Of course, we would also want to preserve the identity: f ought to be able to map the identity of M to the identity of N . In addition, just as we only need one table in the office, we want to make sure that there is a one-to-one correspondence between the elements of the monoids. If we're going to reverse the function, it needs to be onto. That more or less explains why we define

isomorphism in the following way:

Definition 1.75. Let (M, \times) and $(N, +)$ be monoids. If there exists a function $f : M \rightarrow N$ such that

- $f(1_M) = 1_N$ *(f preserves the identity)*
- and

- $f(xy) = f(x) + f(y)$ for all $x, y \in M$, *(f preserves the operation)*

then we call f a **homomorphism**. If f is also a bijection, then we say that M is **isomorphic** to N , write $M \cong N$, and call f an **isomorphism**.^a

(A **bijection** is a function that is both one-to-one and onto.)

^aThe word *homomorphism* comes from the Greek words for *same* and *shape*; the word *isomorphism* comes from the Greek words for *identical* and *shape*. The *shape* is the effect of the operation on the elements of the group. Isomorphism shows that the group operation behaves the same way on elements of the range as on elements of the domain.

If you do not remember the definitions of one-to-one and onto, see Definition 1.32 on page 14. Another way of saying that a function $f : S \rightarrow U$ is onto is to say that $f(S) = U$; that is, the **image** of S is *all* of U , or that *every* element of U corresponds via f to some element of S .

We used (M, \times) and $(N, +)$ in the definition partly to suggest our goal of showing that \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{N} are isomorphic, but also because they could stand for *any* monoids. You will see in due course that not all monoids are isomorphic, but first let's see about \mathbb{M} and \mathbb{N} .

Example 1.76. We claim that (\mathbb{M}, \times) is isomorphic to $(\mathbb{N}, +)$. To see why, let $f : \mathbb{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ by

$$f(x^a) = a.$$

First we show that f is a bijection.

To see that it is one-to-one, let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}$, and assume that $f(t) = f(u)$. By definition of \mathbb{M} , $t = x^a$ and $u = x^b$ for $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. Substituting this into $f(t) = f(u)$, we find that $f(x^a) = f(x^b)$. The definition of f allows us to rewrite this as $a = b$. In this case, $x^a = x^b$, so $t = u$. We assumed that $f(t) = f(u)$ for arbitrary $t, u \in \mathbb{M}$, and showed that $t = u$; that proves f is one-to-one.

To see that f is onto, let $a \in \mathbb{N}$. We need to find $t \in \mathbb{M}$ such that $f(t) = a$. Which t should we choose? We want $f(x^?) = a$, and $f(x^?) = ?$, so the “natural” choice seems to be $t = x^a$. That would certainly guarantee $f(t) = a$, but can we actually find such an object t in \mathbb{M} ? Since $x^a \in \mathbb{M}$, we can in fact make this choice! We took an arbitrary element $a \in \mathbb{N}$, and showed that f maps some element of \mathbb{M} to a ; that proves f is onto.

So f is a bijection. Is it also an isomorphism? First we check that f preserves the operation. Let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}$.¹¹ By definition of \mathbb{M} , $t = x^a$ and $u = x^b$ for $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$. We now manipulate $f(tu)$

¹¹The definition uses the variables x and y , but those are just letters that stand for arbitrary elements of M . Here $M = \mathbb{M}$ and we can likewise choose any two letters we want to stand in place of x and y . It would be a very bad idea to use x when talking about an arbitrary element of \mathbb{M} , because there *is* an element of \mathbb{M} called x . So we choose t and u instead.

using definitions and substitutions to show that the operation is preserved:

$$\begin{aligned} f(tu) &= f(x^a x^b) = f(x^{a+b}) \\ &= a + b \\ &= f(x^a) + f(x^b) = f(t) + f(u). \end{aligned}$$

Does f also preserve the identity? We usually write the identity of $M = \mathbb{M}$ as the symbol 1, but recall that this is a convenient stand-in for x^0 . On the other hand, the identity (under addition) of $N = \mathbb{N}$ is the number 0. We use this fact to verify that f preserves the identity:

$$f(1_M) = f(1) = f(x^0) = 0 = 1_N.$$

(We don't usually write 1_M and 1_N , but I'm doing it here to show explicitly how this relates to the definition.)

We have shown that there exists a bijection $f : \mathbb{M} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ that preserves the operation and the identity. We conclude that $\mathbb{M} \cong \mathbb{N}$.

On the other hand, is $(\mathbb{N}, +) \cong (\mathbb{N}, \times)$? You might think this is easier to verify, since the sets are the same. Let's see what happens.

Example 1.77. Suppose there *does* exist an isomorphism $f : (\mathbb{N}, +) \rightarrow (\mathbb{N}, \times)$. What would have to be true about f ? Let $a \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $f(1) = a$; after all, f has to map 1 to *something*! An isomorphism must preserve the operation, so

$$\begin{aligned} f(2) &= f(1 + 1) = f(1) \times f(1) = a^2 \text{ and} \\ f(3) &= f(1 + (1 + 1)) = f(1) \times f(1 + 1) = a^3, \text{ so that} \\ f(n) &= \dots = a^n \text{ for any } n \in \mathbb{N}. \end{aligned}$$

So f sends *every* integer in $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ to a power of a .

Think about what this implies. For f to be a bijection, it would have to be onto, so *every* element of (\mathbb{N}, \times) would *have* to be an integer power of a . ***This is false!*** After all, 2 is not an integer power of 3, and 3 is not an integer power of 2.

The claim was correct: $(\mathbb{N}, +) \not\cong (\mathbb{N}, \times)$.

Exercises.

Exercise 1.78. Show that the monoids “Boolean or” and “Boolean xor” from Exercises 1.62 and 1.63 are *not* isomorphic.

Exercise 1.79. Let (M, \times) , $(N, +)$, and (P, \sqcap) be monoids.

- Show that the identity function $\iota(x) = x$ is an isomorphism on M .
- Suppose that we know $(M, \times) \cong (N, +)$. That means there is an isomorphism $f : M \rightarrow N$. One of the requirements of isomorphism is that f be a bijection. Recall from previous classes that this means f has an inverse *function*, $f^{-1} : N \rightarrow M$. Show that f^{-1} is an isomorphism.

- (c) Suppose that we know $(M, \times) \cong (N, +)$ and $(N, +) \cong (P, \sqcap)$. As above, we know there exist isomorphisms $f : M \rightarrow N$ and $g : N \rightarrow P$. Let $h = g \circ f$; that is, h is the composition of the functions g and f . Explain why $h : M \rightarrow P$, and show that h is also an isomorphism.
- (d) Explain how (a), (b), and (c) prove that isomorphism is an equivalence relation.

1.5: Direct products

It might have occurred to you that a multivariate monomial is really a vector of univariate monomials. (Pat yourself on the back if so.) If not, here's an example:

$$x_1^6 x_2^3 \text{ looks an awful lot like } (x^6, x^3).$$

So, we can view any element of \mathbb{M}_n as a list of n elements of \mathbb{M} . In fact, if you multiply two multivariate monomials, you would have a corresponding result to multiplying two vectors of univariate monomials componentwise:

$$(x_1^6 x_2^3)(x_1^2 x_2) = x_1^8 x_2^4 \quad \text{and} \quad (x^6, x^3) \times (x^2, x) = (x^8, x^4).$$

Last section, we showed that $(\mathbb{M}, \times) \cong (\mathbb{N}, +)$, so it should make sense that we can simplify this idea even further:

$$x_1^6 x_2^3 \text{ looks an awful lot like } (6, 3), \text{ and in fact } (6, 3) + (2, 1) = (8, 4).$$

We can do this with other sets, as well.

Definition 1.80. Let $r \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and S_1, S_2, \dots, S_r be sets. The **Cartesian product** of S_1, \dots, S_r is the set of all lists of r elements where the i th entry is an element of S_i ; that is,

$$S_1 \times \dots \times S_r = \{(s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n) : s_i \in S_i\}.$$

Example 1.81. We already mentioned a Cartesian product of two sets in the introduction to this chapter. Another example would be $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$; elements of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$ include $(2, x^3)$ and $(0, x^5)$. In general, $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$ is the set of all ordered pairs where the first entry is a natural number, and the second is a monomial.

If we can preserve the structure of the underlying sets in a Cartesian product, we call it a *direct product*.

Definition 1.82. Let $r \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and M_1, M_2, \dots, M_r be monoids. The **direct product** of M_1, \dots, M_r is the pair

$$(M_1 \times \dots \times M_r, \otimes)$$

where $M_1 \times \dots \times M_r$ is the usual Cartesian product, and \otimes is the “natural” operation on $M_1 \times \dots \times M_r$.

What do we mean by the “natural” operation on $M_1 \times \cdots \times M_r$? Let $x, y \in M_1 \times \cdots \times M_r$; by definition, we can write

$$x = (x_1, \dots, x_r) \quad \text{and} \quad y = (y_1, \dots, y_r)$$

where each x_i and each y_i is an element of M_i . Then

$$x \otimes y = (x_1 y_1, x_2 y_2, \dots, x_r y_r)$$

where each product $x_i y_i$ is performed according to the operation that makes the corresponding M_i a monoid.

Example 1.83. Recall that $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$ is a Cartesian product; if we consider the monoids (\mathbb{N}, \times) and (\mathbb{M}, \times) , we can show that the direct product is a monoid, much like \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{M} ! To see why, we check each of the properties.

(closure) Let $t, u \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$. By definition, we can write $t = (a, x^\alpha)$ and $u = (b, x^\beta)$ for appropriate $a, \alpha, b, \beta \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} t u &= (a, x^\alpha) \otimes (b, x^\beta) \\ &= (ab, x^\alpha x^\beta) \quad (\text{def. of } \otimes) \\ &= (ab, x^{\alpha+\beta}) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}. \end{aligned}$$

We took two arbitrary elements of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$, multiplied them according to the new operation, and obtained another element of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$; the operation is therefore closed.

(associativity) Let $t, u, v \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$. By definition, we can write $t = (a, x^\alpha)$, $u = (b, x^\beta)$, and $v = (c, x^\gamma)$ for appropriate $a, \alpha, b, \beta, c, \gamma \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} t(uv) &= (a, x^\alpha) \otimes [(b, x^\beta) \otimes (c, x^\gamma)] \\ &= (a, x^\alpha) \otimes (bc, x^\beta x^\gamma) \\ &= (a(bc), x^\alpha(x^\beta x^\gamma)). \end{aligned}$$

To show that this equals $(tu)v$, we have to rely on the associative properties of \mathbb{N} and \mathbb{M} :

$$\begin{aligned} t(uv) &= ((ab)c, (x^\alpha x^\beta) x^\gamma) \\ &= (ab, x^\alpha x^\beta) \otimes (c, x^\gamma) \\ &= [(a, x^\alpha) \otimes (b, x^\beta)] \otimes (c, x^\gamma) \\ &= (tu)v. \end{aligned}$$

We took three elements of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$, and showed that the operation was associative for them. Since the elements were arbitrary, the operation is associative.

(identity) We claim that the identity of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$ is $(1, 1) = (1, x^0)$. To see why, let $t \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$.

By definition, we can write $t = (a, x^\alpha)$ for appropriate $a, \alpha \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} (1, 1) \otimes t &= (1, 1) \otimes (a, x^\alpha) && \text{(subst.)} \\ &= (1 \times a, 1 \times x^\alpha) && \text{(def. of } \otimes) \\ &= (a, x^\alpha) = t \end{aligned}$$

and similarly $t \otimes (1, 1) = t$. We took an arbitrary element of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$, and showed that $(1, 1)$ acted as an identity under the operation \otimes with that element. Since the element was arbitrary, $(1, 1)$ must be *the* identity for $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{M}$.

Interestingly, if we had used $(\mathbb{N}, +)$ *instead* of (\mathbb{N}, \times) in the previous example, we *still* would have obtained a direct product! Indeed, the direct product of monoids is *always* a monoid!

Theorem 1.84. The direct product of monoids M_1, \dots, M_r is itself a monoid. Its identity element is (e_1, e_2, \dots, e_r) , where each e_i denotes the identity of the corresponding monoid M_i .

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 1.87. □

We finally turn our attention the question of whether \mathbb{M}_n and \mathbb{M}^n are the same.

Admittedly, the two are not identical: \mathbb{M}_n is the set of *products* of powers of n *distinct* variables, whereas \mathbb{M}^n is a set of *lists* of powers of *one* variable. In addition, if the variables are *not* commutative (remember that this can occur), then \mathbb{M}_n and \mathbb{M}^n are not at all similar. Think about $(xy)^4 = xyxyxyxy$; if the variables are commutative, we can combine them into x^4y^4 , which looks like $(4, 4)$. If the variables are not commutative, however, it is not at *all* clear how we could get $(xy)^4$ to correspond to an element of $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$.

That leads to the following result.

Theorem 1.85. The variables of \mathbb{M}_n are commutative if and only if $\mathbb{M}_n \cong \mathbb{M}^n$.

Proof. Assume the variables of \mathbb{M}_n are commutative. Let $f : \mathbb{M}_n \longrightarrow \mathbb{M}^n$ by

$$f(x_1^{a_1} x_2^{a_2} \cdots x_n^{a_n}) = (x^{a_1}, x^{a_2}, \dots, x^{a_n}).$$

The fact that we cannot combine a_i and a_j if $i \neq j$ shows that f is one-to-one, and any element $(x^{b_1}, \dots, x^{b_n})$ of \mathbb{M}^n has a preimage $x_1^{b_1} \cdots x_n^{b_n}$ in \mathbb{M}_n ; thus f is a bijection.

Is it also an isomorphism? To see that it is, let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}_n$. By definition, we can write $t = x_1^{a_1} \cdots x_n^{a_n}$ and $u = x_1^{b_1} \cdots x_n^{b_n}$ for appropriate $a_1, b_1, \dots, a_n, b_n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(tu) &= f\left((x_1^{a_1} \cdots x_n^{a_n})(x_1^{b_1} \cdots x_n^{b_n})\right) && \text{(substitution)} \\ &= f(x_1^{a_1+b_1} \cdots x_n^{a_n+b_n}) && \text{(commutative)} \\ &= (x^{a_1+b_1}, \dots, x^{a_n+b_n}) && \text{(definition of } f) \\ &= (x^{a_1}, \dots, x^{a_n}) \otimes (x^{b_1}, \dots, x^{b_n}) && \text{(def. of } \otimes) \\ &= f(t) \otimes f(u). && \text{(definition of } f) \end{aligned}$$

Hence f is an isomorphism, and we conclude that $\mathbb{M}_n \cong \mathbb{M}^n$.

Conversely, suppose $\mathbb{M}_n \cong \mathbb{M}^n$. By Exercise 1.79, $\mathbb{M}^n \cong \mathbb{M}_n$. By definition, there exists a bijection $f : \mathbb{M}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{M}_n$ satisfying Definition 1.75. Let $t, u \in \mathbb{M}^n$; by definition, we can find $a_i, b_j \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $t = x_1^{a_1} \cdots x_n^{a_n}$ and $u = x_1^{b_1} \cdots x_n^{b_n}$. Since f preserves the operation, $f(tu) = f(t) \otimes f(u)$. Now, $f(t)$ and $f(u)$ are elements of \mathbb{M}_n , which is commutative by Exercise 1.88 (with the $S_i = \mathbb{M}$ here). Hence $f(t) \otimes f(u) = f(u) \otimes f(t)$, so that $f(tu) = f(u) \otimes f(t)$. Using the fact that f preserves the operation again, only in reverse, we see that $f(tu) = f(ut)$. Recall that f , as a bijection, is one-to-one! Thus $tu = ut$, and \mathbb{M}^n is commutative. \square

Notation 1.86. Although we used \otimes in this section to denote the operation in a direct product, this is not standard; I was trying to emphasize that the product is different for the direct product than for the monoids that created it. In general, the product $x \otimes y$ is written simply as xy . Thus, the last line of the proof above would have $f(t)f(u)$ instead of $f(t) \otimes f(u)$.

Exercises.

Exercise 1.87. Prove Theorem 1.84. Use Example 1.83 as a guide.

Exercise 1.88. Suppose M_1, M_2, \dots , and M_n are *commutative* monoids. Show that the direct product $M_1 \times M_2 \times \cdots \times M_n$ is also a commutative monoid.

Exercise 1.89. Show that $\mathbb{M}^n \cong \mathbb{N}^n$. What does this imply about \mathbb{M}_n and \mathbb{N}^n ?

Exercise 1.90. Recall the lattice L from Exercise 1.50. Exercise 1.66 shows that this is both a monoid under addition and a monoid under multiplication, as defined in that exercise. Is either monoid isomorphic to \mathbb{N}^2 ?

Exercise 1.91. Let \mathbb{T}_S^n denote the set of terms in n variables whose coefficients are elements of the set S . For example, $2xy \in \mathbb{T}_{\mathbb{Z}}^2$ and $\pi x^3 \in \mathbb{T}_{\mathbb{R}}^1$.

- (a) Show that if S is a monoid, then so is \mathbb{T}_S^n .
- (b) Show that if S is a monoid, then $\mathbb{T}_S^n \cong S \times \mathbb{M}_n$.

Exercise 1.92. We define the **kernel** of a monoid homomorphism $\varphi : M \rightarrow N$ as

$$\ker \varphi = \{(x, y) \in M \times M : \varphi(x) = \varphi(y)\}.$$

Recall from this section that $M \times M$ is a monoid.

- (a) Show that $\ker \varphi$ is a “submonoid” of $M \times M$; that is, it is a subset that is also a monoid.
- (b) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.7 with the justification.
- (c) Denote $K = \ker \varphi$, and define M/K in the following way.

A **coset** xK is the set S of all $y \in M$ such that $(x, y) \in K$, and M/K is the set of all such cosets.

Show that

- (i) every $x \in M$ appears in at least one coset;
- (ii) M/K is a partition of M .

Claim: $\ker \varphi$ is an equivalence relation on M . That is, if we define a relation \sim on M by $x \sim y$ if and only if $(x, y) \in \ker \varphi$, then \sim satisfies the reflective, symmetric, and transitive properties.

1. We prove the three properties in turn.
2. The reflexive property:
 - (a) Let $m \in M$.
 - (b) By _____, $\varphi(m) = \varphi(m)$.
 - (c) By _____, $(m, m) \in \ker \varphi$.
 - (d) Since _____, every element of M is related to itself by $\ker \varphi$.
3. The symmetric property:
 - (a) Let $a, b \in M$. Assume a and b are related by $\ker \varphi$.
 - (b) By _____, $\varphi(a) = \varphi(b)$.
 - (c) By _____, $\varphi(b) = \varphi(a)$.
 - (d) By _____, b and a are related by $\ker \varphi$.
 - (e) Since _____, this holds for all pairs of elements of M .
4. The transitive property:
 - (a) Let $a, b, c \in M$. Assume a and b are related by $\ker \varphi$, and b and c are related by $\ker \varphi$.
 - (b) By _____, $\varphi(a) = \varphi(b)$ and $\varphi(b) = \varphi(c)$.
 - (c) By _____, $\varphi(a) = \varphi(c)$.
 - (d) By _____, a and c are related by $\ker \varphi$.
 - (e) Since _____, this holds for any selection of three elements of M .
5. We have shown that a relation defined by $\ker \varphi$ satisfies the reflexive, symmetric, and transitive properties. Thus, $\ker \varphi$ is an equivalence relation on M .

Figure 1.7. Material for Exercise 1.92(b)

Suppose we try to define an operation on the cosets in a “natural” way:

$$(xK) \circ (yK) = (xy)K.$$

It can happen that two cosets X and Y can each have different representations: $X = xK = wK$, and $Y = yK = zK$. It often happens that $xy \neq wz$, which could open a can of worms:

$$XY = (xK)(yK) = (xy)K \neq (wz)K = (wK)(zK) = XY.$$

Obviously, we’d rather that not happen, so

(iii) Fill in each blank of Figure 1.8 with the justification.

Once you’ve shown that the operation is well defined, show that

(iv) M/K is a monoid with this operation.

This means that we can use monoid morphisms to create new monoids.

1.6: Absorption and the Ascending Chain Condition

We conclude our study of monoids by introducing a new object, and a fundamental notion.

Absorption

Let M and N be monoids, φ a homomorphism from M to N , and $K = \ker \varphi$.

Claim: The “natural” operation on cosets of K is well defined.

Proof:

1. Let $X, Y \in ______$. That is, X and Y are cosets of K .
2. By $______$, there exist $x, y \in M$ such that $X = xK$ and $Y = yK$.
3. Assume there exist $w, z \in ______$ such that $X = wK$ and $Y = zK$. We must show that $(xy)K = (wz)K$.
4. Let $a \in (xy)K$.
5. By definition of coset, $______ \in K$.
6. By $______$, $\varphi(xy) = \varphi(a)$.
7. By $______$, $\varphi(x)\varphi(y) = \varphi(a)$.
8. We claim that $\varphi(x) = \varphi(w)$ and $\varphi(y) = \varphi(z)$.
 - (a) To see why, recall that by $______$, $xK = X = wK$ and $yK = Y = zK$.
 - (b) By part $______$ of this exercise, $(x, x) \in K$ and $(w, w) \in K$.
 - (c) By $______$, $x \in xK$ and $w \in wK$.
 - (d) By $______$, $w \in xK$.
 - (e) By $______$, $(x, w) \in \ker \varphi$.
 - (f) By $______$, $\varphi(x) = \varphi(w)$. A similar argument shows that $\varphi(y) = \varphi(z)$.
9. By $______$, $\varphi(w)\varphi(z) = \varphi(a)$.
10. By $______$, $\varphi(wz) = \varphi(a)$.
11. By definition of coset, $______ \in K$.
12. By $______$, $a \in (wz)K$.
13. By $______$, $(xy)K \subseteq (wz)K$. A similar argument shows that $(xy)K \supseteq (wz)K$.
14. By definition of equality of sets, $______$.
15. We have seen that the representations of $______$ and $______$ do not matter; the product is the same regardless. Coset multiplication is well defined.

Figure 1.8. Material for Exercise 1.92

Definition 1.93. Let M be a monoid, and $A \subseteq M$. If $ma \in A$ for every $m \in M$ and $a \in A$, then A **absorbs from** M . We also say that A is an **absorbing subset**, or that satisfies the **absorption property**.

Notice that if A absorbs from M , then A is closed under multiplication: if $x, y \in A$, then $A \subseteq M$ implies that $x \in M$, so by absorption, $xy \in A$, as well. Unfortunately, that doesn't make A a monoid, as 1_M might not be in A .

Example 1.94. Write $2\mathbb{Z}$ for the set of even integers. By definition, $2\mathbb{Z} \subsetneq \mathbb{Z}$. Notice that $2\mathbb{Z}$ is *not* a monoid, since $1 \notin 2\mathbb{Z}$. On the other hand, any $a \in 2\mathbb{Z}$ has the form $a = 2z$ for some $z \in \mathbb{Z}$. Thus, for any $m \in \mathbb{Z}$, we have

$$ma = m(2z) = 2(mz) \in 2\mathbb{Z}.$$

Since a and m were arbitrary, $2\mathbb{Z}$ absorbs from \mathbb{Z} .

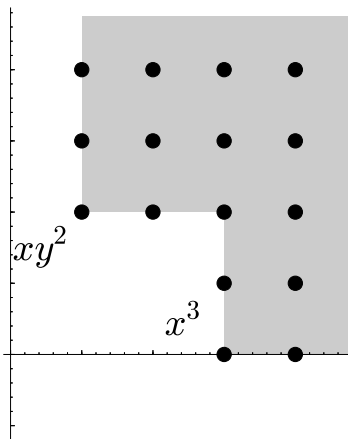
The set of integer multiples of an integer is important enough that it inspires notation.

Notation 1.95. We write $d\mathbb{Z}$ for the set of integer multiples of d .

So $2\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -2, 0, 2, 4, \dots\}$ is the set of integer multiples of 2; $5\mathbb{Z}$ is the set of integer multiples of 5; and so forth. You will show in Exercise 1.105 that $d\mathbb{Z}$ absorbs multiplication from \mathbb{Z} , but *not* addition.

The monomials provide another important example of absorption.

Example 1.96. Let A be an absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_2 . Suppose that $xy^2, x^3 \in A$, but none of their factors is in A . Since A absorbs from \mathbb{M}_2 , all the monomial multiples of xy^2 and x^3 are also in A . We can illustrate this with a **monomial diagram**:



Every dot represents a monomial in A ; the dot at $(1,2)$ represents the monomial xy^2 , and the dots above it represent xy^3, xy^4, \dots . Notice that multiples of xy^2 and x^3 lie *above and to the right* of these monomials.

The diagram suggests that we can identify special elements of subsets that absorb from the monomials.

Definition 1.97. Suppose A is an absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_n , and $t \in A$. If no other $u \in A$ divides t , then we call t a **generator** of A .

In the diagram above, xy^2 and x^3 are the generators of an ideal corresponding to the monomials covered by the shaded region, extending indefinitely upwards and rightwards. The name “generator” is apt, because every monomial multiple of these two xy^2 and x^3 is also in A , but nothing “smaller” is in A , in the sense of divisibility.

This leads us to a remarkable result.

Dickson’s Lemma and the Ascending Chain Condition

Theorem 1.98 (Dickson’s Lemma). Every absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_n has a finite number of generators.

(Actually, Dickson proved a similar result for a similar set, but is more or less the same.) The proof is a little complicated, so we’ll illustrate it using some monomial diagrams. In Figure 1.9(A), we see an absorbing subset A . (The same as you saw before.) Essentially, the argument *projects* A down one dimension, as in Figure 1.9(B). In this smaller dimension, an argument by induction allows us to choose a finite number of generators, which correspond to elements of A , illustrated in Figure 1.9(C). These corresponding elements of A are always generators of A , but they might

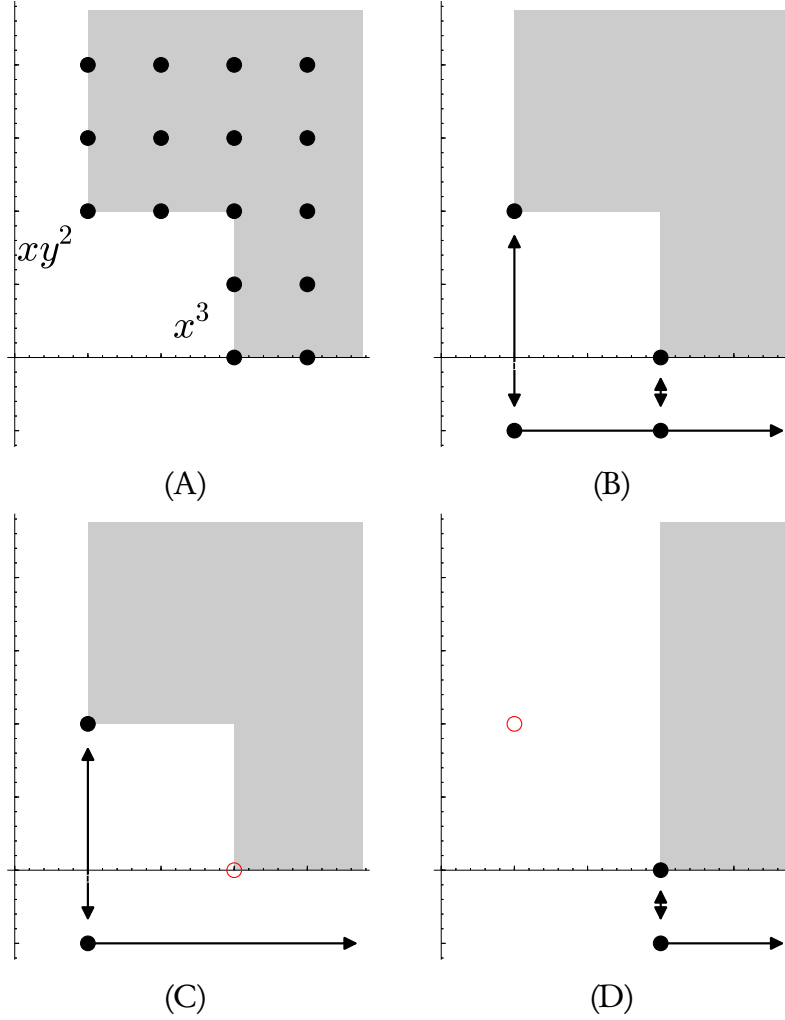


Figure 1.9. Illustration of the proof of Dickson's Lemma.

not be *all* the generators of A , shown in Figure 1.9(C) by the red circle. In that case, we take the remaining generators of A , use them to construct a new absorbing subset, and project again to obtain new generators, as in Figure 1.9(D). The thing to notice is that, in Figures 1.9(C) and 1.9(D), the y -values of the new generators decrease with each projection. This cannot continue indefinitely, since \mathbb{N} is well-ordered, and we are done.

Proof. Let A be an absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_n . We proceed by induction on the dimension, n .

For the *inductive base*, assume $n = 1$. Let S be the set of exponents of monomials in A . Since $S \subseteq \mathbb{N}$, it has a minimal element; call it a . By definition of S , $x^a \in A$. We claim that x^a is, in fact, the one generator of A . To see why, let $u \in A$. Suppose that $u \mid x^a$; by definition of monomial divisibility, $u = x^b$ and $b \leq a$. Since $u \in A$, it follows that $b \in S$. Since a is the *minimal* element of S , $a \leq b$. We already knew that $b \leq a$, so it must be that $a = b$. The claim is proved: no other element of A divides x^a . Thus, x^a is a generator, and since $n = 1$, the generator is unique.

For the *inductive hypothesis*, assume that any absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_{n-1} has a finite number of generators.

For the *inductive step*, we use A to construct a sequence of absorbing subsets of \mathbb{M}_{n-1} in the following way.

- Let B_1 be the set of all monomials in \mathbb{M}_{n-1} such that $t \in B_1$ implies that $tx_n^a \in A$ for some $a \in \mathbb{N}$. We call this a **projection** of A onto \mathbb{M}_{n-1} .

We claim that B_1 absorbs from \mathbb{M}_{n-1} . To see why, let $t \in B_1$, and let $u \in \mathbb{M}_{n-1}$ be any monomial multiple of t . By definition, there exists $a \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $tx_n^a \in A$. Since A absorbs from \mathbb{M}_n , and $u \in \mathbb{M}_{n-1} \subsetneq \mathbb{M}_n$, absorption implies that $u(tx_n^a) \in A$. The associative property tells us that $(ut)x_n^a \in A$, and the definition of B_1 tells us that $ut \in B_1$. Since t_1 is an arbitrary element of B_1 , u is an arbitrary multiple of t , and we found that $u \in B_1$, we can conclude that B_1 absorbs from \mathbb{M}_{n-1} .

This result is important! By the inductive hypothesis, B_1 has a finite number of generators; call them $\{t_1, \dots, t_m\}$. Each of these generators corresponds to an element of A . Let $T_1 = \{t_1x_n^{a_1}, \dots, t_mx_n^{a_m}\} \subsetneq A$ such that a_1 is the *smallest* element of \mathbb{N} such that $t_1x_n^{a_1} \in A$, \dots , a_m is the *smallest* element of \mathbb{N} such that $t_mx_n^{a_m} \in A$. (Such a smallest element must exist on account of the well-ordering of \mathbb{N} .)

We now claim that T_1 is a list of some of the generators of A . To see this, assume by way of contradiction that we can find some $u \in T_1$ that is not a generator of A . The definition of a generator means that there exists some other $v \in A$ that divides u . We can write $u = tx_n^a$ and $v = t'x_n^b$ for some $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$; then $t, t' \in B_1$. Here, things fall apart! After all, t' also divides t , contradicting the assumption that t' is a generator of B_1 .

- If T_1 is a complete list of the generators of A , then we are done. Otherwise, let $A^{(1)}$ be the absorbing subset whose elements are multiples of the generators of A that are *not* in T_1 . Let B_2 be the projection of $A^{(1)}$ onto \mathbb{M}_{n-1} . As before, B_2 absorbs from \mathbb{M}_{n-1} , and the inductive hypothesis implies that it has a finite number of generators, which correspond to a set T_2 of generators of $A^{(1)}$.
- As long as T_i is not a complete list of the generators of A , we continue building
 - an absorbing subset $A^{(i)}$ whose elements are multiples of the generators of A that are *not* in T_i ;
 - an absorbing subset B_{i+1} whose elements are the projections of $A^{(i)}$ onto \mathbb{M}_{n-1} , and
 - sets T_{i+1} of generators of A that correspond to generators of B_{i+1} .

Can this process continue indefinitely? No, it cannot. First, if $t \in T_{i+1}$, then write it as $t = t'x_n^a$. On the one hand,

$$t \in A^{(i)} \subsetneq A^{(i-1)} \subsetneq \dots \subsetneq A^{(1)} \subsetneq A,$$

so t' was an element of every B_j such that $j \leq i$. That means that for each j , t' was divisible by at least one generator u'_j of B_j . However, t was *not* in the absorbing subsets generated by T_1, \dots, T_i . So the $u_j \in T_j$ corresponding to u'_j does *not* divide t . Write $t = x_1^{a_1} \dots x_n^{a_n}$ and $u = x_1^{b_1} \dots x_n^{b_n}$. Since $u' \mid t'$, $b_k \leq a_k$ for each $k = 1, \dots, n-1$. Since $u \nmid t$, $b_n > a_n$.

In other words, the minimal degree of x_n is decreasing in T_i as i increases. This gives us a strictly decreasing sequence of natural numbers. By the well-ordering property, such a sequence cannot continue indefinitely. Thus, we cannot create sets T_i containing new generators of A indefinitely; there are only finitely many such sets. In other words, A has a finite number of generators. \square

This fact leads us to an important concept, that we will exploit greatly, starting in Chapter 8.

Definition 1.99. Let M be a monoid. Suppose that, for any ideals A_1, A_2, \dots of M , we can guarantee that if $A_1 \subseteq A_2 \subseteq \dots$, then there is some $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ such that $A_n = A_{n+1} = \dots$. In this case, we say that M satisfies the **ascending chain condition**, or that M is **Noetherian**.

A look back at the Hilbert-Dickson game

We conclude with two results that will, I hope, delight you. There is a technique for counting the number of elements *not* shaded in the monomial diagram.

Definition 1.100. Let A be an absorbing subset of \mathbb{M}_n . The **Hilbert Function** $H_A(d)$ counts the number of monomials of total degree d and *not* in A . The **Affine Hilbert Function** $H_A^{\text{aff}}(d)$ is the sum of the Hilbert Function for degree no more than d ; that is, $H_A^{\text{aff}}(d) = \sum_{i=0}^d H_A(i)$.

Example 1.101. In the diagram of Example 1.96, $H(0) = 1$, $H(1) = 2$, $H(2) = 3$, $H(3) = 2$, and $H(d) = 1$ for all $d \geq 4$. On the other hand, $H^{\text{aff}}(4) = 9$.

The following result is immediate.

Theorem 1.102. Suppose that A is the absorbing subset generated by the moves chosen in a Hilbert-Dickson game, and let $d \in \mathbb{N}$. The number of moves (a, b) possible in a Hilbert-Dickson game with $a + b \leq d$ is $H_A^{\text{aff}}(d)$.

Corollary 1.103. Every Hilbert-Dickson game must end in a finite number of moves.

Proof. Every i th move in a Hilbert-Dickson game corresponds to the creation of a new absorbing subset A_i of \mathbb{M}_2 . Let A be the union of these A_i ; you will show in Exercise 1.106 that A also absorbs from \mathbb{M}_2 . By Dickson's Lemma, A has finitely many generators; call them t_1, \dots, t_m . Each t_j appears in A , and the definition of union means that each t_j must appear in some A_{i_j} . Let k be the largest such i_j ; that is, $k = \max\{i_1, \dots, i_m\}$. Practically speaking, “largest” means “last chosen”, so each t_i has been chosen at this point. Another way of saying this in symbols is that $t_1, \dots, t_m \in \bigcup_{i=1}^k A_i$. All the generators of A are in this union, so no element of A can be absent! So $A = \bigcup_{i=1}^k A_i$; in other words, the ideal is generated after finitely many moves. \square

Dickson's Lemma is a perfect illustration of the Ascending Chain Condition. It also illustrates a relationship between the Ascending Chain Condition and the well-ordering of the integers: we used the well-ordering of the integers repeatedly to prove that \mathbb{M}_n is Noetherian. You will see this relationship again in the future.

Exercises.

Exercise 1.104. Is $2\mathbb{Z}$ an absorbing subset of \mathbb{Z} under addition? Why or why not?

Suppose A_1, A_2, \dots absorb from a monoid M , and $A_i \subseteq A_{i+1}$ for each $i \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

Claim: Show that $A = \bigcup_{i=1}^{\infty} A_i$ also absorbs from M .

1. Let $m \in M$ and $a \in A$.
 2. By _____, there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}^+$ such that $a \in A_i$.
 3. By _____, $ma \in A_i$.
 4. By _____, $A_i \subseteq A$.
 5. By _____, $ma \in A$.
 6. Since _____, this is true for all $m \in M$ and all $a \in A$.
 7. By _____, A also absorbs from M .
-

Figure 1.10. Material for Exercise 1.106

Exercise 1.105. Let $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $A = d\mathbb{Z}$. Show that A is an absorbing subset of \mathbb{Z} .

Exercise 1.106. Fill in each blank of Figure 1.10 with its justification.

Exercise 1.107. Let L be the lattice defined in Exercise 1.50. Exercise 1.66 shows that L is a monoid under its strange multiplication. Let $P = (3, 1)$ and A be the absorbing subset generated by P . Sketch L and P , distinguishing the elements of P from those of L using different colors, or an X , or some similar distinguishing mark.

Part II

Groups

Chapter 2:

Groups

In Chapter 1, we described monoids. In this chapter, we study a *group*, which is a special kind of monoid. Groups are special in that every element in the group has an *inverse element*.

It is not entirely wrong to say that groups actually have two operations. You will see in a few moments that \mathbb{Z} is a group under addition: not only does it satisfy the properties of a monoid, but each of its elements also has an additive inverse in \mathbb{Z} . Stated a different way, \mathbb{Z} has a second operation, *subtraction*. However, the conditions on this second operation are so restrictive (it has to “undo” the first operation) that most mathematicians won’t consider groups to have two operations; they prefer to say that a property of the group operation is that every element has an inverse element.

This property is essential to a large number of mathematical phenomena. We describe a special class of groups called the cyclic groups (Section 2.3) and then look at two groups related to important mathematical problems. The first, D_3 , describes symmetries of a triangle using groups (Section 2.2). The second, Ω_n , consists of the roots of unity (Section 2.4).

2.1: Groups

This first section looks only at some very basic properties of groups, and some very basic examples.

Precise definition, first examples

Definition 2.1. Let G be a set, and \circ a binary operation on G . We say that the pair (G, \circ) is a **group** if it satisfies the following properties.

- (closure) for any $x, y \in G$, we have $x \circ y \in G$;
- (associative) for any $x, y, z \in G$, we have $(x \circ y) \circ z = x \circ (y \circ z)$;
- (identity) there exists an **identity element** $e \in G$; that is, for any $x \in G$, we have $x \circ e = e \circ x = x$; and
- (inverses) each element of the group has an **inverse**; that is, for any $x \in G$ we can find $y \in G$ such that $x \circ y = y \circ x = e$.

We may also say that G is a **group under** \circ . We say that (G, \circ) is an **abelian group** if it also satisfies

- (commutative) the operation is commutative; that is, $xy = yx$ for all $x, y \in G$.

Notation 2.2. If the operation is addition, we may refer to the group as an **additive group** or a **group under addition**. We also write $-x$ instead of x^{-1} , and $x + (-y)$ or even $x - y$ instead of $x + y^{-1}$, keeping with custom. Additive groups are normally abelian.

If the operation is multiplication, we may refer to the group as a **multiplicative group** or a **group under multiplication**. The operation is usually understood from context, so we typically write G rather than $(G, +)$ or (G, \times) or (G, \circ) . We will write $(G, +)$ when we want to emphasize that the operation is addition.

Example 2.3. Certainly \mathbb{Z} is an additive group; in fact, it is abelian. Why?

- We know it is a monoid under addition.
- Every integer has an additive inverse *in* \mathbb{Z} .
- Addition of integers is commutative.

However, while \mathbb{N} is a monoid under addition, it is not a group. Why not? The problem is with inverses. We know that every natural number has an additive inverse; after all, $2 + (-2) = 0$. Nevertheless, the inverse property is *not* satisfied because $-2 \notin \mathbb{N}$! It's not enough to have an inverse in *some* set; *the inverse be in the same set!* For this reason, \mathbb{N} is not a group.

Example 2.4. In addition to \mathbb{Z} , the following sets are groups under addition.

- the set \mathbb{Q} of **rational numbers**;
- the set \mathbb{R} of **real numbers**; and
- if $S = \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Q}$, or \mathbb{R} , the set $S^{m \times n}$ of $m \times n$ matrices whose elements are in S . (It's important here that the operation is *addition*.)

However, none of them is a group under multiplication. On the other hand, the set of invertible $n \times n$ matrices with elements in \mathbb{Q} or \mathbb{R} is a multiplicative group. We leave the proof to the exercises, but this fact is a consequence of properties you learn in linear algebra.

Definition 2.5. We call the set of invertible $n \times n$ matrices with elements in \mathbb{R} the **general linear group of degree n** , and write $\text{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$ for this set.

Order of a group, Cayley tables

Mathematicians of the 20th century invested substantial effort in an attempt to classify all *finite, simple groups*. (You will learn later what makes a group “simple”.) Replicating that achievement is far, far beyond the scope of these notes, but we can take a few steps in this area.

Definition 2.6. Let S be any set. We write $|S|$ to indicate the number of elements in S , and say that $|S|$ is the **size** or **cardinality** of S . If there is an infinite number of elements in S , then we write $|S| = \infty$. We also write $|S| < \infty$ to indicate that $|S|$ is finite, if we don't want to state a precise number.

For any group G , the **order of G** is the size of G . A group has finite order if $|G| < \infty$ and infinite order if $|G| = \infty$.

Here are three examples of finite groups; in fact, they are all of order 2.

Example 2.7. The sets

$$\{1, -1\}, \quad \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\},$$

$$\text{and} \quad \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \right\}$$

are all groups under multiplication:

- In the first group, the identity is 1, and -1 is its own inverse; closure is obvious, and you know from arithmetic that the associative property holds.
- In the second and third groups, the identity is the identity matrix; each matrix is its own inverse; closure is easy to verify, and you know from linear algebra that the associative property holds.

I will now make an extraordinary claim:

Claim 1. For all intents and purposes, there is only one group of order two.

This claim may seem preposterous on its face; after all, the example above has three completely different groups of order two. In fact, the claim is quite vague, because we're using vague language. After all, what is meant by the phrase, "for all intents and purposes"? Basically, we meant that:

- group theory cannot distinguish between the groups *as groups*; or,
- their multiplication table (or addition table, or whatever-operation table) has the same structure.

If you read the second characterization and think, "he means they're isomorphic!", then pat yourself on the back. Unfortunately, we won't look at this notion seriously until Chapter 4, but Chapter 1 gave you a rough idea of what that meant: the groups are identical *as groups*.

We will prove the claim above in a "brute force" manner, by looking at the table generated by the operation of the group. Now, "the table generated by the operation of the group" is an ungainly phrase, and quite a mouthful. Since the name of the table depends on the operation (multiplication table, addition table, etc.), we have a convenient phrase that describes all of them.

Definition 2.8. The table listing all results of the operation of a monoid or group is its **Cayley table**.

Since groups are monoids, we can call their table a Cayley table, too.

Back to our claim. We want to build a Cayley table for a "generic" group of order two. We will show that there is only one possible way to construct such a table. As a consequence, regardless of the set and its operation, every group of order 2 behaves exactly the same way. *It does not matter one whit* what the elements of G are, or the fancy name we use for the operation, or the convoluted procedure we use to simplify computations in the group. If there are only two elements, and it's a group, then *it always works the same*. Why?

Example 2.9. Let G be an arbitrary group of order two. By definition, it has an identity, so write $G = \{e, a\}$ where e represents the known identity, and a the other element.

We did *not* say that e represents the *only* identity. For all we know, a might also be an identity; is that possible? In fact, it is not possible; why? Remember that a group is a monoid. We showed in Proposition 2.12 that the identity of a monoid is unique; thus, the identity of a group is unique; thus, there can be only one identity, e .

Now we build the addition table. We *have* to assign $a \circ a = e$. *Why?*

- To satisfy the identity property, we must have $e \circ e = e$, $e \circ a = a$, and $a \circ e = a$.
- To satisfy the inverse property, a must have an additive inverse. We know the inverse can't be e , since $a \circ e = a$; so the only inverse possible is a itself! That is, $a^{-1} = a$. (Read that as, "the inverse of a is a .") So $a \circ a^{-1} = a \circ a = e$.

So the Cayley table of our group looks like:

\circ	e	a
e	e	a
a	a	e

The only assumption we made about G is that it was a group of order two. That means this table applies to *any* group of order two, and we have determined the Cayley table of *all* groups of order two!

In Definition 2.1 and Example 2.9, the symbol \circ is a placeholder for any operation. We assumed nothing about its actual behavior, so it can represent addition, multiplication, or other operations that we have not yet considered. Behold the power of abstraction!

Other elementary properties of groups

Notation 2.10. We adopt the following convention:

- If we know only that G is a group under some operation, we write \circ for the operation and proceed as if the group were multiplicative, so that xy is shorthand for $x \circ y$.
- If we know that G is a group and a symbol is provided for its operation, we *usually* use that symbol for the group, *but not always*. Sometimes we treat the group as if it were multiplicative, writing xy instead of the symbol provided.
- We reserve the symbol $+$ exclusively for additive groups.

The following fact looks obvious—but remember, we’re talking about elements of *any* group, not merely the sets you have worked with in the past.

Proposition 2.11. Let G be a group and $x \in G$. Then $(x^{-1})^{-1} = x$. If G is additive, we write instead that $-(-x) = x$.

Proposition 2.11 says that the inverse of the inverse of x is x itself; that is, if y is the inverse of x , then x is the inverse of y .

Proof. You prove it! See Exercise 2.15. □

Proposition 2.12. The identity of a group is both two-sided and unique; that is, every group has exactly one identity. Also, the inverse of an element is both two-sided and unique; that is, every element has exactly one inverse element.

Proof. Let G be a group. We already pointed out that, since G is a monoid, and the identity of a monoid is both two-sided and unique, the identity of G is unique.

We turn to the question of the inverse. First we show that any inverse is two-sided. Let $x \in G$. Let w be a left inverse of x , and y a right inverse of x . Since y is a right inverse,

$$xy = e.$$

By the identity property, we know that $ex = x$. So, substitution and the associative property give us

$$\begin{aligned}(xy)x &= ex \\ x(yx) &= x.\end{aligned}$$

Since w is a left inverse, $wx = e$, so substitution, the associative property, the identity property, and the inverse property give

$$\begin{aligned} w(x(yx)) &= wx \\ (wx)(yx) &= wx \\ e(yx) &= e \\ yx &= e. \end{aligned}$$

Hence y is a left inverse of x . We already knew that it was a right inverse of x , so right inverses are in fact two-sided inverses. A similar argument shows that left inverses are two-sided inverses.

Now we show that inverses are unique. Suppose that $y, z \in G$ are both inverses of x . Since y is an inverse of x ,

$$xy = e.$$

Since z is an inverse of x ,

$$xz = e.$$

By substitution,

$$xy = xz.$$

Multiply both sides of this equation on the left by y to obtain

$$y(xy) = y(xz).$$

By the associative property,

$$(yx)y = (yx)z,$$

and by the inverse property,

$$ey = ez.$$

Since e is the identity of G ,

$$y = z.$$

We chose two arbitrary inverses of x , and showed that they were the same element. Hence the inverse of x is unique. \square

In Example 2.9, the structure of a group compelled certain assignments for the operation. We can infer a similar conclusion for any group of finite order.

Theorem 2.13. Let G be a group of finite order, and let $a, b \in G$. Then a appears exactly once in any row or column of the Cayley table that is headed by b .

It might surprise you that this is *not* necessarily true for a monoid; see Exercise 2.23.

Proof. First we show that a cannot appear more than once in any row or column headed by b . In fact, we show it only for a row; the proof for a column is similar.

The element a appears in a row of the Cayley table headed by b any time there exists $c \in G$ such that $bc = a$. Let $c, d \in G$ such that $bc = a$ and $bd = a$. (We have *not* assumed that $c \neq d$.)

Let G be a group, and $x \in G$.

Claim: $(x^{-1})^{-1} = x$; or, if the operation is addition, $-(-x) = x$.

Proof:

1. By _____, $x \cdot x^{-1} = e$ and $x^{-1} \cdot x = e$.
2. By _____, $(x^{-1})^{-1} = x$.
3. Negative are merely how we express opposites when the operation is addition, so $-(-x) = x$.

Figure 2.1. Material for Exercise 2.15

Since $a = a$, substitution implies that $bc = bd$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} c & \underset{\text{id.}}{=} ec \underset{\text{inv.}}{=} (b^{-1}b)c \underset{\text{ass.}}{=} b^{-1}(bc) \\ & \underset{\text{subs.}}{=} b^{-1}(bd) \underset{\text{ass.}}{=} (b^{-1}b)d \underset{\text{inv.}}{=} ed \underset{\text{id.}}{=} d. \end{aligned}$$

By the transitive property of equality, $c = d$. This shows that if a appears in one column of the row headed by b , then that column is unique; a does not appear in a different column.

We still have to show that a appears in at least one row of the addition table headed by b . This follows from the fact that each row of the Cayley table contains $|G|$ elements. What applies to a above applies to the other elements, so each element of G can appear at most once. Thus, if we do not use a , then only $n - 1$ pairs are defined, which contradicts either the definition of an operation (bx must be defined for all $x \in G$) or closure (that $bx \in G$ for all $x \in G$). Hence a must appear at least once. \square

Definition 2.14. Let G_1, \dots, G_n be groups. The **direct product** of G_1, \dots, G_n is the cartesian product $G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$ together with the operation \otimes such that for any (g_1, \dots, g_n) and (h_1, \dots, h_n) in $G_1 \times \dots \times G_n$,

$$(g_1, \dots, g_n) \otimes (h_1, \dots, h_n) = (g_1 h_1, \dots, g_n h_n),$$

where each product $g_i h_i$ is performed according to the operation of G_i . In other words, the direct product of *groups* generalizes the direct product of *monoids*.

You will show in the exercises that the direct product of groups is also a group.

Exercises.

Exercise 2.15.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 2.1 with the appropriate justification or statement.
- (b) Why should someone think to look at the product of x and x^{-1} in order to show that $(x^{-1})^{-1} = x$?

Exercise 2.16. Explain why (\mathbb{M}, \times) is not a group.

Exercise 2.17. Is $(\mathbb{N}^+, \text{lcm})$ a group? (See Exercise 1.71.)

Exercise 2.18. Let G be a group, and $x, y, z \in G$. Show that if $xz = yz$, then $x = y$; or if the operation is addition, that if $x + z = y + z$, then $x = y$.

Exercise 2.19. Show in detail that $\mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$ is an additive group.

Exercise 2.20. Recall the Boolean-or monoid (B, \vee) from Exercise 1.62. Is it a group? If so, is it abelian? Explain how it justifies each property. If not, explain why not.

Exercise 2.21. Recall the Boolean-xor monoid (B, \oplus) from Exercise 1.63. Is it a group? If so, is it abelian? Explain how it justifies each property. If not, explain why not.

Exercise 2.22. In Section 12, we showed that F_S , the set of all functions, is a monoid for any S .

- (a) Show that $F_{\mathbb{R}}$, the set of all functions on the real numbers \mathbb{R} , is *not* a group.
- (b) Describe a subset of $F_{\mathbb{R}}$ that *is* a group. Another way of looking at this question is: what restriction would you have to impose on any function $f \in F_S$ to fix the problem you found in part (a)?

Exercise 2.23. Indicate a monoid you have studied that does not satisfy Theorem 2.13. That is, find a monoid M such that (i) M is finite, and (ii) there exist $a, b \in M$ such that in the the Cayley table, a appears at least twice in a row or column headed by b .

Exercise 2.24. Show that the Cartesian product

$$\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} := \{(a, b) : a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$$

is a group under the direct product's notion of addition; that is,

$$x + y = (a + c, b + d).$$

Exercise 2.25. Let (G, \circ) and $(H, *)$ be groups, and define

$$G \times H = \{(a, b) : a \in G, b \in H\}.$$

Define an operation \dagger on $G \times H$ in the following way. For any $x, y \in G \times H$, write $x = (a, b)$ and $y = (c, d)$; we say that

$$x \dagger y = (a \circ c, b * d).$$

- (a) Show that $(G \times H, \dagger)$ is a group.
- (b) Show that if G and H are both abelian, then so is $G \times H$.

Exercise 2.26. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Let G_1, G_2, \dots, G_n be groups, and consider

$$\begin{aligned} \prod_{i=1}^n G_i &= G_1 \times G_2 \times \dots \times G_n \\ &= \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) : a_i \in G_i \ \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, n\} \end{aligned}$$

with the operation \dagger where if $x = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ and $y = (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$, then

$$x \dagger y = (a_1 b_1, a_2 b_2, \dots, a_n b_n),$$

Claim: Any two elements a, b of any group G satisfy $(ab)^{-1} = b^{-1}a^{-1}$.

Proof:

1. Let _____.
2. By the _____, _____, and _____ properties of groups,

$$(ab)b^{-1}a^{-1} = a(b \cdot b^{-1})a^{-1} = aea^{-1} = aa^{-1} = e.$$

3. We chose _____ arbitrarily, so this holds for all elements of all groups, as claimed.
-

Figure 2.2. Material for Exercise 2.34

where each product $a_i b_i$ is performed according to the operation of the group G_i . Show that $\prod_{i=1}^n G_i$ is a group, and notice that this shows that the direct product of groups is a group, as claimed above. (We used \otimes instead of \dagger there, though.)

Exercise 2.27. Let $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

- (a) Show in detail that $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ is a group under addition.
- (b) Show by counterexample that $\mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$ is *not* a group under multiplication.

Exercise 2.28. Let $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Explain why $\text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R})$ satisfies the identity and inverse properties of a group.

Exercise 2.29. Let $\mathbb{R}^+ = \{x \in \mathbb{R} : x > 0\}$, and \times the ordinary multiplication of real numbers. Show that (\mathbb{R}^+, \times) is a group.

Exercise 2.30. Define \mathbb{Q}^* to be the set of non-zero rational numbers; that is,

$$\mathbb{Q}^* = \left\{ \frac{a}{b} : a, b \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ where } a \neq 0 \text{ and } b \neq 0 \right\}.$$

Show that \mathbb{Q}^* is a multiplicative group.

Exercise 2.31. Show that every group of order 3 has the same structure.

Exercise 2.32. Not every group of order 4 has the same structure, because there are two Cayley tables with different structures. One of these groups is the **Klein four-group**, where each element is its own inverse; the other is called a **cyclic group** of order 4, where not every element is its own inverse. Determine the Cayley tables for each group.

Exercise 2.33. Let G be a group, and $x, y \in G$. Show that $xy^{-1} \in G$.

Exercise 2.34.

- (a) Let $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and $G = \text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R})$. Show that there exist $a, b \in G$ such that $(ab)^{-1} \neq a^{-1}b^{-1}$.
- (b) Suppose that H is an arbitrary group.
 - (i) Explain why we cannot assume that for every $a, b \in H$, $(ab)^{-1} = a^{-1}b^{-1}$.
 - (ii) Fill in the blanks of Figure 2.2 with the appropriate justification or statement.

Exercise 2.35. Let \circ denote the ordinary composition of functions, and consider the following functions that map any point $P = (x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ to another point in \mathbb{R}^2 :

$$\begin{aligned} I(P) &= P, \\ F(P) &= (y, x), \\ X(P) &= (-x, y), \\ Y(P) &= (x, -y). \end{aligned}$$

- Let $P = (2, 3)$. Label the points $P, I(P), F(P), X(P), Y(P), (F \circ X)(P), (X \circ Y)(P)$, and $(F \circ F)(P)$ on an x - y axis. (Some of these may result in the same point; if so, label the point twice.)
- Show that $F \circ F = X \circ X = Y \circ Y = I$.
- Show that $G = \{I, F, X, Y\}$ is *not* a group.
- Find the smallest group \overline{G} such that $G \subset \overline{G}$. While you're at it, construct the Cayley table for \overline{G} .
- Is \overline{G} abelian?

Definition 2.36. Let G be any group.

- For all $x, y \in G$, define the **commutator of x and y** to be $x^{-1}y^{-1}xy$. We write $[x, y]$ for the commutator of x and y .
- For all $z, g \in G$, define the **conjugation of g by z** to be zgz^{-1} . We write g^z for the conjugation of g by z .

- Exercise 2.37.** (a) Explain why $[x, y] = e$ iff x and y commute.
- Show that $[x, y]^{-1} = [y, x]$; that is, the inverse of $[x, y]$ is $[y, x]$.
 - Show that $(g^z)^{-1} = (g^{-1})^z$; that is, the inverse of conjugation of g by z is the conjugation of the inverse of g by z .
 - Fill in each blank of Figure 2.3 with the appropriate justification or statement.

2.2: The symmetries of a triangle

In this section, we show that the symmetries of an equilateral triangle form a group. We call this group D_3 . This group is *not abelian*. You already know that groups of order 2, 3, and 4 are abelian; in Section 3.3 you will learn why a group of order 5 must also be abelian. Thus, D_3 is the smallest non-abelian group.

Intuitive development of D_3

To describe D_3 , start with an equilateral triangle in \mathbb{R}^2 , with its center at the origin. We want to look at its group of symmetries. Intuitively, a “symmetry” is a transformation of the plane that leaves the *triangle* in the same location, even if its *points* are in different locations. “Transformations” include actions like rotation, reflection (flip), and translation (shift). Translating the plane in some direction certainly won't leave the triangle intact, but rotation and reflection can. Two obvious symmetries of an equilateral triangle are a 120° rotation through the origin, and a reflection through the y -axis. We'll call the first of these ρ , and the second φ . See Figure 2.4.

Claim: $[x, y]^z = [x^z, y^z]$ for all $x, y, z \in G$.

Proof:

1. Let ____.
2. By ____, $[x^z, y^z] = [zxz^{-1}, zyz^{-1}]$.
3. By ____, $[zxz^{-1}, zyz^{-1}] = (zxz^{-1})^{-1} (zyz^{-1})^{-1} (zxz^{-1}) (zyz^{-1})$.
4. By Exercise ____,

$$\begin{aligned} (zxz^{-1})^{-1} (zyz^{-1})^{-1} (zxz^{-1}) (zyz^{-1}) &= \\ &= (zx^{-1}z^{-1}) (zy^{-1}z^{-1}) (zxz^{-1}) (zyz^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

5. By ____,

$$\begin{aligned} (zx^{-1}z^{-1}) (zy^{-1}z^{-1}) (zxz^{-1}) (zyz^{-1}) &= \\ (zx^{-1}) (z^{-1}z) y^{-1} (z^{-1}z) x (z^{-1}z) (yz^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

6. By ____,

$$\begin{aligned} (zx^{-1}) (z^{-1}z) y^{-1} (z^{-1}z) x (z^{-1}z) (yz^{-1}) &= \\ = (zx^{-1}) e y^{-1} e x e (yz^{-1}). \end{aligned}$$

7. By ____, $(zx^{-1}) e y^{-1} e x e (yz^{-1}) = (zx^{-1}) y^{-1} x (yz^{-1})$.

8. By ____, $(zx^{-1}) y^{-1} x (yz^{-1}) = z (x^{-1} y^{-1} x y) z^{-1}$.

9. By ____, $z (x^{-1} y^{-1} x y) z^{-1} = z [x, y] z^{-1}$.

10. By ____, $z [x, y] z^{-1} = [x, y]^z$.

11. By ____, $[x^z, y^z] = [x, y]^z$.
-

Figure 2.3. Material for Exercise 2.37(c)

It is helpful to observe two important properties.

Theorem 2.38. If φ and ρ are as specified, then $\varphi\rho = \rho^2\varphi$.

For now, we consider intuitive proofs only. Detailed proofs appear later in the section.

Intuitive proof. The expression $\varphi\rho$ means to apply ρ first, then φ . It'll help if you sketch what takes place here. Rotating 120° moves vertex 1 to vertex 2, vertex 2 to vertex 3, and vertex 3 to vertex 1. Flipping through the y -axis leaves the top vertex in place; since we performed the rotation first, the top vertex is now vertex 3, so vertices 1 and 2 are the ones swapped. Thus, vertex 1 has moved to vertex 3, vertex 3 has moved to vertex 1, and vertex 2 is in its original location.

On the other hand, $\rho^2\varphi$ means to apply φ first, then apply ρ twice. Again, it will help to sketch what follows. Flipping through the y -axis swaps vertices 2 and 3, leaving vertex 1 in the same place. Rotating twice then moves vertex 1 to the lower right position, vertex 3 to the top position, and vertex 2 to the lower left position. This is the same arrangement of the vertices as we had for $\varphi\rho$, which means that $\varphi\rho = \rho^2\varphi$. \square

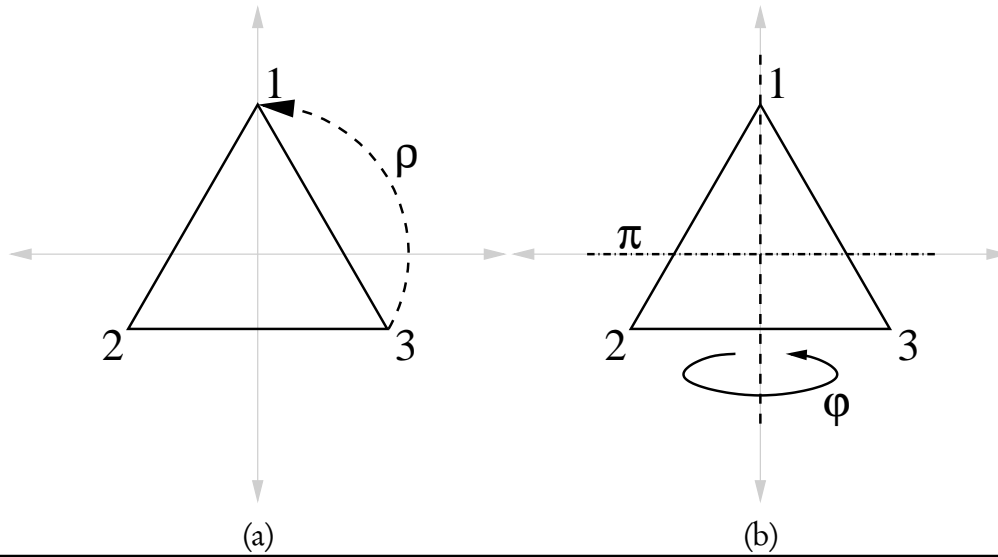


Figure 2.4. Rotation and reflection of the triangle

You might notice that there's a gap in our reasoning: we showed that the *vertices* of the triangle ended up in the same place, but not the *points in between*. That requires a little more work, which is why we provide detailed proofs later.

By the way, did you notice something interesting about Corollary 2.38? It implies that the operation in D_3 is non-commutative! We have $\varphi\rho = \rho^2\varphi$, and a little logic shows that $\rho^2\varphi \neq \rho\varphi$: thus $\varphi\rho \neq \rho\varphi$. After all, $\rho\varphi$

Another “obvious” symmetry of the triangle is the transformation where you *do nothing* – or, if you prefer, where you effectively *move every point back to itself*, as in a 360° rotation, say. We'll call this symmetry ι . It gives us the last property we need to specify the group, D_3 .

Theorem 2.39. In D_3 , $\rho^3 = \varphi^2 = \iota$.

Intuitive proof. Rotating 120° three times is the same as rotating 360° , which is the same as not rotating at all! Likewise, φ moves any point (x, y) to $(x, -y)$, and applying φ again moves $(x, -y)$ back to (x, y) , which is the same as not flipping at all!

We are now ready to specify D_3 . □

Definition 2.40. Let $D_3 = \{\iota, \varphi, \rho, \rho^2, \rho\varphi, \rho^2\varphi\}$.

Theorem 2.41. D_3 is a group under composition of functions.

Proof. To prove this, we will show that all the properties of a group are satisfied. We will start the proof, and leave you to finish it in Exercise 2.45.

Closure: In Exercise 2.45, you will compute the Cayley table of D_3 . There, you will see that every composition is also an element of D_3 .

Associative: Way back in Section 12, we showed that F_S , the set of functions over a set S , was a monoid under composition for *any* set S . To do that, we had to show that composition

of functions was associative. There's no point in repeating that proof here; doing it once is good enough for a sane person. Symmetries are functions; after all, they map any point in \mathbb{R}^2 to another point in \mathbb{R}^2 , with no ambiguity about where the point goes. So, we've already proved this.

Identity: We claim that ι is the identity function. To see this, let $\sigma \in D_3$ be any symmetry; we need to show that $\iota\sigma = \iota$ and $\sigma\iota = \sigma$. For the first, apply σ to the triangle. Then apply ι . Since ι effectively leaves everything in place, all the points are in the same place they were after we applied σ . In other words, $\iota\sigma = \sigma$. The proof that $\sigma\iota = \sigma$ is similar.

Alternately, you could look at the result of Exercise 2.45; you will find that $\iota\sigma = \sigma\iota = \sigma$ for every $\sigma \in D_3$.

Inverse: Intuitively, rotation and reflection are one-to-one-functions: after all, if a point P is mapped to a point R by either, it doesn't make sense that another point Q would also be mapped to R . Since one-to-one functions have inverses, every element σ of D_3 must have an inverse function σ^{-1} , which undoes whatever σ did. But is $\sigma^{-1} \in D_3$, also? Since σ maps every point of the triangle onto the triangle, σ^{-1} will undo that map: every point of the triangle will be mapped back onto itself, as well. So, yes, $\sigma^{-1} \in D_3$.

Here, the intuition is a little too imprecise; it isn't *that* obvious that rotation is a one-to-one function. Fortunately, the result of Exercise 2.45 shows that ι , the identity, appears in every row and column. That means that every element has an inverse. \square

Detailed proof that D_3 contains all symmetries of the triangle

To prove that D_3 contains *all* symmetries of the triangle, we need to make some notions more precise. First, what is a symmetry? A **symmetry** of *any* polygon is a distance-preserving function on \mathbb{R}^2 that maps points of the polygon back onto itself. Notice the careful wording: the *points* of the polygon can change places, but since they have to be mapped back onto the polygon, the polygon itself has to remain in the same place.

Let's look at the specifics for our triangle. What functions are symmetries of the triangle? To answer this question, we divide it into two parts.

1. What are the distance-preserving functions that map \mathbb{R}^2 to itself, and leave the origin undisturbed? Here, distance is measured by the usual metric,

$$d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}.$$

(You might wonder why we don't want the origin to move. Basically, if a function α preserves both distances between points and a figure centered at the origin, then the origin *cannot* move, since then its distance to points on the figure would change.)

2. Not all of the functions identified by question (1) map points on the triangle back onto the triangle; for example a 45° degree rotation does not. Which ones do?

Lemma 2.42 answers the first question.

Lemma 2.42. Let $\alpha : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$. If

- α does not move the origin; that is, $\alpha(0,0) = (0,0)$, and
- the distance between $\alpha(P)$ and $\alpha(R)$ is the same as the distance between P and R for every $P, R \in \mathbb{R}^2$,

then α has one of the following two forms:

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & -\sin t \\ \sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix} \quad \exists t \in \mathbb{R}$$

or

$$\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ \sin t & -\cos t \end{pmatrix} \quad \exists t \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The two values of t may be different.

Proof. Assume that $\alpha(0,0) = (0,0)$ and for every $P, R \in \mathbb{R}^2$ the distance between $\alpha(P)$ and $\alpha(R)$ is the same as the distance between P and R . We can determine α precisely merely from how it acts on two points in the plane!

First, let $P = (1,0)$. Write $\alpha(P) = Q = (q_1, q_2)$; this is the point where α moves P . The distance between P and the origin is 1. Since $\alpha(0,0) = (0,0)$, the distance between Q and the origin is $\sqrt{q_1^2 + q_2^2}$. Because α preserves distance,

$$1 = \sqrt{q_1^2 + q_2^2},$$

or

$$q_1^2 + q_2^2 = 1.$$

The only values for Q that satisfy this equation are those points that lie on the circle whose center is the origin. Any point on this circle can be parametrized as

$$(\cos t, \sin t)$$

where $t \in [0, 2\pi)$ represents an angle. Hence, $\alpha(P) = (\cos t, \sin t)$.

Let $R = (0,1)$. Write $\alpha(R) = S = (s_1, s_2)$. An argument similar to the one above shows that S also lies on the circle whose center is the origin. Moreover, the distance between P and R is $\sqrt{2}$, so the distance between Q and S is also $\sqrt{2}$. That is,

$$\sqrt{(\cos t - s_1)^2 + (\sin t - s_2)^2} = \sqrt{2},$$

or

$$(\cos t - s_1)^2 + (\sin t - s_2)^2 = 2. \quad (5)$$

We can simplify (5) to obtain

$$-2(s_1 \cos t + s_2 \sin t) + (s_1^2 + s_2^2) = 1. \quad (6)$$

To solve this, recall that the distance from S to the origin must be the same as the distance from

R to the origin, which is 1. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\sqrt{s_1^2 + s_2^2} &= 1 \\ s_1^2 + s_2^2 &= 1.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this into (6), we find that

$$\begin{aligned}-2(s_1 \cos t + s_2 \sin t) + s_1^2 + s_2^2 &= 1 \\ -2(s_1 \cos t + s_2 \sin t) + 1 &= 1 \\ -2(s_1 \cos t + s_2 \sin t) &= 0 \\ s_1 \cos t &= -s_2 \sin t.\end{aligned}\tag{7}$$

At this point we can see that $s_1 = \sin t$ and $s_2 = -\cos t$ would solve the problem; so would $s_1 = -\sin t$ and $s_2 = \cos t$. Are there any other solutions?

Recall that $s_1^2 + s_2^2 = 1$, so $s_2 = \pm\sqrt{1-s_1^2}$. Likewise $\sin t = \pm\sqrt{1-\cos^2 t}$. Substituting into equation (7) and squaring (so as to remove the radicals), we find that

$$\begin{aligned}s_1 \cos t &= -\sqrt{1-s_1^2} \cdot \sqrt{1-\cos^2 t} \\ s_1^2 \cos^2 t &= (1-s_1^2)(1-\cos^2 t) \\ s_1^2 \cos^2 t &= 1-\cos^2 t-s_1^2+s_1^2 \cos^2 t \\ s_1^2 &= 1-\cos^2 t \\ s_1^2 &= \sin^2 t \\ \therefore s_1 &= \pm \sin t.\end{aligned}$$

Along with equation (7), this implies that $s_2 = \mp \cos t$. Thus there are *two* possible values of s_1 and s_2 .

It can be shown (see Exercise 2.48) that α is a linear transformation on the vector space \mathbb{R}^2 with the basis $\{\vec{P}, \vec{R}\} = \{(1,0), (0,1)\}$. Linear algebra tells us that we can describe any linear transformation as a matrix. If $s = (\sin t, -\cos t)$ then

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ \sin t & -\cos t \end{pmatrix};$$

otherwise

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} \cos t & -\sin t \\ \sin t & \cos t \end{pmatrix}.$$

The lemma names the first of these forms φ and the second ρ . □

Before answering the second question, let's consider an example of what the two basic forms of α do to the points in the plane.

Example 2.43. Consider the set of points

$$S = \{(0,2), (\pm 2,1), (\pm 1,-2)\};$$

these form the vertices of a (non-regular) pentagon in the plane. Let $t = \pi/4$; then

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \varphi = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

If we apply ρ to every point in the plane, then the points of \mathcal{S} move to

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(\mathcal{S}) &= \{\rho(0,2), \rho(-2,1), \rho(2,1), \rho(-1,-2), \rho(1,-2)\} \\ &= \left\{ (-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}), \left(-\sqrt{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, -\sqrt{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right), \right. \\ &\quad \left(\sqrt{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \sqrt{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \right), \\ &\quad \left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \sqrt{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \sqrt{2} \right), \\ &\quad \left. \left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \sqrt{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \sqrt{2} \right) \right\} \\ &\approx \{(-1.4, 1.4), (-2.1, -0.7), (0.7, 2.1), \\ &\quad (0.7, -2.1), (2.1, -0.7)\}. \end{aligned}$$

This is a 45° ($\pi/4$) counterclockwise rotation in the plane.

If we apply φ to every point in the plane, then the points of \mathcal{S} move to

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(\mathcal{S}) &= \{\varphi(0,2), \varphi(-2,1), \varphi(2,1), \varphi(-1,-2), \varphi(1,-2)\} \\ &\approx \{(1.4, -1.4), (-0.7, -2.1), (2.1, 0.7), \\ &\quad \downarrow (-2.1, 0.7), (-0.7, 2.1)\}. \end{aligned}$$

This is shown in Figure 2.5. The line of reflection for φ has slope $(1 - \cos \frac{\pi}{4}) / \sin \frac{\pi}{4}$. (You will show this in Exercise 2.50)

The second question asks which of the matrices described by Lemma 2.42 also preserve the triangle.

- The first solution (ρ) corresponds to a rotation of degree t of the plane. To preserve the triangle, we can only have $t = 0, 2\pi/3, 4\pi/3$ ($0^\circ, 120^\circ, 240^\circ$). (See Figure 2.4(a).) Let ι correspond to $t = 0$, the identity rotation; notice that

$$\iota = \begin{pmatrix} \cos 0 & -\sin 0 \\ \sin 0 & \cos 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

which is what we would expect for the identity. We can let ρ correspond to a counterclockwise rotation of 120° , so

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} & -\sin \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ \sin \frac{2\pi}{3} & \cos \frac{2\pi}{3} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

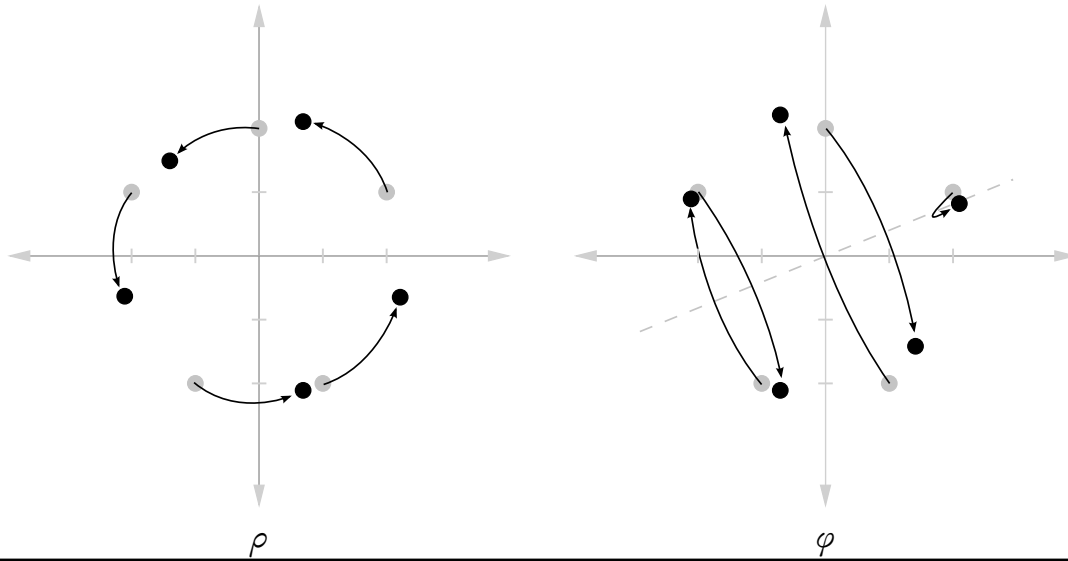


Figure 2.5. Actions of ρ and φ on a pentagon, with $t = \pi/4$

A rotation of 240° is the same as rotating 120° twice. We can write that as $\rho \circ \rho$ or ρ^2 ; matrix multiplication gives us

$$\begin{aligned}\rho^2 &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

- The second solution (φ) corresponds to a flip along the line whose slope is

$$m = (1 - \cos t) / \sin t.$$

One way to do this would be to flip across the y -axis (see Figure 2.4(b)). For this we need the slope to be undefined, so the denominator needs to be zero and the numerator needs to be non-zero. One possibility for t is $t = \pi$ (but not $t = 0$). So

$$\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \pi & \sin \pi \\ \sin \pi & -\cos \pi \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

There are two other flips, but we can actually ignore them, because they are combinations of φ and ρ . (Why? See Exercise 2.47.)

We can now give more detailed proofs of Theorems 2.38 and 2.39. We'll prove the first here, and you'll prove the second in the exercises.

Detailed proof of Theorem 2.38. Compare

$$\varphi\rho = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\rho^2\varphi &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

□

Exercises.

Unless otherwise specified ρ and φ refer to the elements of D_3 .

Exercise 2.44. Show explicitly (by matrix multiplication) that $\rho^3 = \varphi^2 = \iota$.

Exercise 2.45. The multiplication table for D_3 has at least this structure:

\circ	ι	φ	ρ	ρ^2	$\rho\varphi$	$\rho^2\varphi$
ι	ι	φ	ρ	ρ^2	$\rho\varphi$	$\rho^2\varphi$
φ	φ		$\rho^2\varphi$			
ρ	ρ	$\rho\varphi$				
ρ^2	ρ^2					
$\rho\varphi$	$\rho\varphi$					
$\rho^2\varphi$	$\rho^2\varphi$					

Complete the multiplication table, writing every element in the form $\rho^m\varphi^n$, never with φ before ρ . Do not use matrix multiplication; instead, use Theorems 2.38 and 2.39.

Exercise 2.46. Find a geometric figure (not a polygon) that is preserved by at least one rotation, at least one reflection, and at least one translation. Keep in mind that, when we say “preserved”, we mean that the points of the figure end up on the figure itself — just as a 120° rotation leaves the triangle on itself.

Exercise 2.47. Two other values of t allow us to define flips for the triangle. Find these values of t , and explain why their matrices are equivalent to the matrices $\rho\varphi$ and $\rho^2\varphi$.

Exercise 2.48. Show that any function α satisfying the requirements of Theorem 2.42 is a linear transformation; that is, for all $P, Q \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and for all $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, $\alpha(aP + bQ) = a\alpha(P) + b\alpha(Q)$. Use the following steps.

- Prove that $\alpha(P) \cdot \alpha(Q) = P \cdot Q$, where \cdot denotes the usual dot product (or inner product) on \mathbb{R}^2 .
- Show that $\alpha(1, 0) \cdot \alpha(0, 1) = 0$.
- Show that $\alpha((a, 0) + (0, b)) = a\alpha(1, 0) + b\alpha(0, 1)$.
- Show that $\alpha(aP) = a\alpha(P)$.
- Show that $\alpha(P + Q) = \alpha(P) + \alpha(Q)$.

Exercise 2.49. Show that the only stationary point in \mathbb{R}^2 for the general ρ is the origin. That is, if $\rho(P) = P$, then $P = (0, 0)$. (By “general”, we mean any ρ , not just the one in D_3 .)

Exercise 2.50. Fill in each blank of Figure 2.6 with the appropriate justification.

Claim: The only stationary points of φ lie along the line whose slope is $(1 - \cos t) / \sin t$, where $t \in [0, 2\pi)$ and $t \neq 0, \pi$. If $t = 0$, only the x -axis is stationary, and for $t = \pi$, only the y -axis.

Proof:

1. Let $P \in \mathbb{R}^2$. By _____, there exist $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $P = (x, y)$.

2. Assume φ leaves P stationary. By _____,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos t & \sin t \\ \sin t & -\cos t \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}.$$

3. By linear algebra,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \text{_____} \\ \text{_____} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}.$$

4. By the principle of linear independence, _____ = x and _____ = y .

5. For each equation, collect x on the left hand side, and y on the right, to obtain

$$\begin{cases} x(\text{_____}) = -y(\text{_____}) \\ x(\text{_____}) = y(\text{_____}) \end{cases}.$$

6. If we solve the first equation for y , we find that $y = \text{_____}$.

(a) This, of course, requires us to assume that _____ $\neq 0$.

(b) If that *was* in fact zero, then $t = \text{_____}$, _____ (remembering that $t \in [0, 2\pi)$).

7. Put these values of t aside. If we solve the second equation for y , we find that $y = \text{_____}$.

(a) Again, this requires us to assume that _____ $\neq 0$.

(b) If that *was* in fact zero, then $t = \text{_____}$. We already put this value aside, so ignore it.

8. Let's look at what happens when $t \neq \text{_____}$ and _____.

(a) Multiply numerator and denominator of the right hand side of the first solution by the denominator of the second to obtain $y = \text{_____}$.

(b) Multiply right hand side of the second with denominator of the first: $y = \text{_____}$.

(c) By _____, $\sin^2 t = 1 - \cos^2 t$. Substitution into the second solution gives the first!

(d) That is, points that lie along the line $y = \text{_____}$ are left stationary by φ .

9. Now consider the values of t we excluded.

(a) If $t = \text{_____}$, then the matrix simplifies to $\varphi = \text{_____}$.

(b) To satisfy $\varphi(P) = P$, we must have _____ = 0, and _____ free. The points that satisfy this are precisely the _____-axis.

(c) If $t = \text{_____}$, then the matrix simplifies to $\varphi = \text{_____}$.

(d) To satisfy $\varphi(P) = P$, we must have _____ = 0, and _____ free. The points that satisfy this are precisely the _____-axis.

Figure 2.6. Material for Exercise 2.50

2.3: Cyclic groups and order of elements

Here we re-introduce the familiar notation of exponents, in a manner consistent with what you learned for exponents of real numbers. We use this to describe an important class of groups

that recur frequently.

Cyclic groups and generators

Notation 2.51. Let G be a group, and $g \in G$. If we want to perform the operation on g ten times, we could write

$$\prod_{i=1}^{10} g = g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g \cdot g$$

but this grows tiresome. Instead we will adapt notation from high-school algebra and write

$$g^{10}.$$

We likewise define g^{-10} to represent

$$\prod_{i=1}^{10} g^{-1} = g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1} \cdot g^{-1}.$$

Indeed, for any $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and any $g \in G$ we adopt the following convention:

- g^n means to perform the operation on n copies of g , so $g^n = \prod_{i=1}^n g$;
- g^{-n} means to perform the operation on n copies of g^{-1} , so $g^{-n} = \prod_{i=1}^n g^{-1} = (g^{-1})^n$;
- $g^0 = e$, and if I want to be annoying I can write $g^0 = \prod_{i=1}^0 g$.

In additive groups we write instead $ng = \sum_{i=1}^n g$, $(-n)g = \sum_{i=1}^n (-g)$, and $0g = 0$.

Notice that this definition assume n is *positive*.

Definition 2.52. Let G be a group. If there exists $g \in G$ such that every element $x \in G$ has the form $x = g^n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, then G is a **cyclic group** and we write $G = \langle g \rangle$. We call g a **generator** of G .

The idea of a cyclic group is that it has the form

$$\{\dots, g^{-2}, g^{-1}, e, g^1, g^2, \dots\}.$$

If the group is additive, we would of course write

$$\{\dots, -2g, -g, 0, g, 2g, \dots\}.$$

Example 2.53. \mathbb{Z} is cyclic, since any $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ has the form $n \cdot 1$. Thus $\mathbb{Z} = \langle 1 \rangle$. In addition, n has the form $(-n) \cdot (-1)$, so $\mathbb{Z} = \langle -1 \rangle$ as well. Both 1 and -1 are generators of \mathbb{Z} .

You will show in the exercises that \mathbb{Q} is not cyclic.

In Definition 2.52 we referred to g as *a* generator of G , not as *the* generator. There could in fact be more than one generator; we see this in Example 2.53 from the fact that $\mathbb{Z} = \langle 1 \rangle = \langle -1 \rangle$. Here is another example.

Example 2.54. Let

$$G = \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \subsetneq \text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R}).$$

It turns out that G is a group; both the second and third matrices generate it. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^2 &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^3 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^4 &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

An important question arises here. Given a group G and an element $g \in G$, define

$$\langle g \rangle = \{\dots, g^{-2}, g^{-1}, e, g, g^2, \dots\}.$$

We know that every cyclic group has the form $\langle g \rangle$ for some $g \in G$. Is the converse also true that $\langle g \rangle$ is a group for any $g \in G$? As a matter of fact, yes!

Theorem 2.55. For every group G and for every $g \in G$, $\langle g \rangle$ is an abelian group.

To prove Theorem 2.55, we need to make sure we can perform the usual arithmetic on exponents.

Lemma 2.56. Let G be a group, $g \in G$, and $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Each of the following holds:

- (A) $g^m g^{-m} = e$; that is, $g^{-m} = (g^m)^{-1}$.
- (B) $(g^m)^n = g^{mn}$.
- (C) $g^m g^n = g^{m+n}$.

The proof will justify this argument by applying the notation described at the beginning of this chapter. We have to be careful with this approach, because in the lemma we have $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$, but the notation was given under the assumption that $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. To make this work, we'll have to consider the cases where m and n are positive or negative separately. We call this a *case analysis*.

Proof. Each claim follows by case analysis.

- (A) If $m = 0$, then $g^{-m} = g^0 = e = e^{-1} = (g^0)^{-1} = (g^m)^{-1}$.

Otherwise, $m \neq 0$. First assume that $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$. By notation, $g^{-m} = \prod_{i=1}^m g^{-1}$. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 g^m g^{-m} &\stackrel{\text{def.}}{=} \left(\prod_{i=1}^m g \right) \left(\prod_{i=1}^m g^{-1} \right) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{ass.}}{=} \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g \right) (g \cdot g^{-1}) \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g^{-1} \right) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{id.}}{=} \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g \right) e \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g^{-1} \right) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{inv.}}{=} \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g \right) \left(\prod_{i=1}^{m-1} g^{-1} \right) \\
 &\quad \vdots \\
 &= e.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the inverse of an element is unique, $g^{-m} = (g^m)^{-1}$.

Now assume that $m \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$. Since m is negative, we cannot express the product using m ; the notation discussed on page 63 requires a *positive* exponent. Consider instead $\hat{m} = |m| \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Since the opposite of a negative number is positive, we can write $-m = \hat{m}$ and $-\hat{m} = m$. Since \hat{m} is positive, we can apply the notation to it directly; $g^{-m} = g^{\hat{m}} = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g$, while $g^m = g^{-\hat{m}} = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g^{-1}$. (To see this in a more concrete example, try it with an actual number. If $m = -5$, then $\hat{m} = |-5| = 5 = -(-5)$, so $g^m = g^{-5} = g^{-\hat{m}}$ and $g^{-m} = g^5 = g^{\hat{m}}$.) As above, we have

$$g^m g^{-m} \stackrel{\text{subs.}}{=} g^{-\hat{m}} g^{\hat{m}} \stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} \left(\prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g^{-1} \right) \left(\prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g \right) = e.$$

Hence $g^{-m} = (g^m)^{-1}$.

- (B) If $n = 0$, then $(g^m)^n = (g^m)^0 = e$ because *anything* to the zero power is e . Assume first that $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. By notation, $(g^m)^n = \prod_{i=1}^n g^m$. We split this into two subcases.

(B1) If $m \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$(g^m)^n \stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} \prod_{i=1}^n \left(\prod_{i=1}^m g \right) \stackrel{\text{ass.}}{=} \prod_{i=1}^{mn} g \stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} g^{mn}.$$

(B2) Otherwise, let $\hat{m} = |m| \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 (g^m)^n &\stackrel{\text{subs.}}{=} (g^{-\hat{m}})^n \stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} \prod_{i=1}^n \left(\prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g^{-1} \right) \\
 &\stackrel{\text{ass.}}{=} \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}n} g^{-1} \stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} (g^{-1})^{\hat{m}n} \\
 &\stackrel{\text{not.}}{=} g^{-\hat{m}n} \stackrel{\text{subs.}}{=} g^{mn}.
 \end{aligned}$$

What if n is negative? Let $\hat{n} = -n$; by notation, $(g^m)^n = (g^m)^{-\hat{n}} = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{n}} (g^m)^{-1}$. By (A), this becomes $\prod_{i=1}^{\hat{n}} g^{-m}$. By notation, we can rewrite this as $(g^{-m})^{\hat{n}}$. Since $\hat{n} \in \mathbb{N}^+$, we can apply case (B1) or (B2) as appropriate, so

$$\begin{aligned} (g^m)^n &= (g^{-m})^{\hat{n}} \stackrel{\text{(B1) or (B2)}}{=} g^{(-m)\hat{n}} \\ &\stackrel{\text{integers!}}{=} g^{m(-\hat{n})} \stackrel{\text{subst}}{=} g^{mn}. \end{aligned}$$

(C) We consider three cases.

If $m = 0$ or $n = 0$, then $g^0 = e$, so $g^{-0} = g^0 = e$.

If m, n have the same sign (that is, $m, n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ or $m, n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$), then write $\hat{m} = |m|$, $\hat{n} = |n|$, $g_m = g^{\hat{m}}$, and $g_n = g^{\hat{n}}$. This effects a really nice trick: if $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$, then $g_m = g$, whereas if m is negative, $g_m = g^{-1}$. This notational trick allows us to write $g^m = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g_m$ and $g^n = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{n}} g_n$, where $g_m = g_n$ and \hat{m} and \hat{n} are both positive integers. Then

$$\begin{aligned} g^m g^n &= \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g_m \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{n}} g_n = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g_m \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{n}} g_m \\ &= \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}+\hat{n}} g_m = (g_m)^{\hat{m}+\hat{n}} = g^{m+n}. \end{aligned}$$

Since g and n were arbitrary, the induction implies that $g^n g^{-n} = e$ for all $g \in G$, $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Now consider the case where m and n have different signs. In the first case, suppose m is negative and $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. As in (A), let $\hat{m} = |m| \in \mathbb{N}^+$; then

$$g^m g^n = (g^{-1})^{-m} g^n = \left(\prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}} g^{-1} \right) \left(\prod_{i=1}^n g \right).$$

If $\hat{m} \geq n$, we have more copies of g^{-1} than g , so after cancellation,

$$g^m g^n = \prod_{i=1}^{\hat{m}-n} g^{-1} = g^{-(\hat{m}-n)} = g^{m+n}.$$

Otherwise, $\hat{m} < n$, and we have more copies of g than of g^{-1} . After cancellation,

$$g^m g^n = \prod_{i=1}^{n-\hat{m}} g = g^{n-\hat{m}} = g^{n+m} = g^{m+n}.$$

The remaining case ($m \in \mathbb{N}^+$, $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \mathbb{N}$) is similar, and you will prove it for homework. □

These properties of exponent arithmetic allow us to show that $\langle g \rangle$ is a group.

Proof of Theorem 2.55. We show that $\langle g \rangle$ satisfies the properties of an abelian group. Let $x, y, z \in \langle g \rangle$. By definition of $\langle g \rangle$, there exist $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $x = g^a$, $y = g^b$, and $z = g^c$. We will

use Lemma 2.56 implicitly.

- By substitution, $xy = g^a g^b = g^{a+b} \in \langle g \rangle$. So $\langle g \rangle$ is closed.
- By substitution, $x(yz) = g^a (g^b g^c)$. These are elements of G by inclusion (that is, $\langle g \rangle \subseteq G$ so $x, y, z \in G$), so the associative property in G gives us

$$x(yz) = g^a (g^b g^c) = (g^a g^b) g^c = (xy)z.$$

- By definition, $e = g^0 \in \langle g \rangle$.
- By definition, $g^{-a} \in \langle g \rangle$, and $x \cdot g^{-a} = g^a g^{-a} = e$. Hence $x^{-1} = g^{-a} \in \langle g \rangle$.
- Using the fact that \mathbb{Z} is commutative under addition,

$$xy = g^a g^b = g^{a+b} = g^{b+a} = g^b g^a = yx.$$

□

The order of an element

Given an element and an operation, Theorem 2.55 links them to a group. It makes sense, therefore, to link an element to the order of the group that it generates.

Definition 2.57. Let G be a group, and $g \in G$. We say that the **order** of g is $\text{ord}(g) = |\langle g \rangle|$. If $\text{ord}(g) = \infty$, we say that g has **infinite order**.

If the order of a group is finite, then we can write an element in different ways.

Example 2.58. Recall Example 2.54; we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^0 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^4 \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^8 = \dots \end{aligned}$$

Since multiples of 4 give the identity, let's take any power of the matrix, and divide it by 4. The Division Theorem allows us to write any power of the matrix as $4q + r$, where $0 \leq r < 4$. Since there are only four possible remainders, and multiples of 4 give the identity, positive powers of this matrix can generate only four possible matrices:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{4q} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{4q+1} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{4q+2} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{4q+3} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

We can do the same with negative powers; the Division Theorem still gives us only four possible remainders. Let's write

$$g = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Thus

$$\langle g \rangle = \{I_2, g, g^2, g^3\}.$$

The example suggests that if the order of an element G is $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then we can write

$$\langle g \rangle = \{e, g, g^2, \dots, g^{n-1}\}.$$

This explains why we call $\langle g \rangle$ a *cyclic* group: once they reach $\text{ord}(g)$, the powers of g “cycle”. To prove this in general, we have to show that for a generic cyclic group $\langle g \rangle$ with $\text{ord}(g) = n$,

- n is the smallest positive power that gives us the identity; that is, $g^n = e$, and
- for any two integers between 0 and n , the powers of g are different; that is, if $0 \leq a < b < n$, then $g^a \neq g^b$.

Theorem 2.59 accomplishes that, and a bit more as well.

Theorem 2.59. Let G be a group, $g \in G$, and $\text{ord}(g) = n$. Then

(A) for all $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $0 \leq a < b < n$, we have $g^a \neq g^b$.

In addition, if $n < \infty$, each of the following holds:

(B) $g^n = e$;

(C) n is the smallest positive integer d such that $g^d = e$; and

(D) if $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $n \mid (a - b)$, then $g^a = g^b$.

Proof. The fundamental assertion of the theorem is (A). The remaining assertions turn out to be corollaries.

(A) By way of contradiction, suppose that there exist $a, b \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $0 \leq a < b < n$ and $g^a = g^b$; then $e = (g^a)^{-1} g^b$. By Lemma 2.56, we can write

$$e = g^{-a} g^b = g^{-a+b} = g^{b-a}.$$

Let $S = \{m \in \mathbb{N}^+ : g^m = e\}$. By the well-ordering property of \mathbb{N} , there exists a smallest element of S ; call it d . Recall that $a < b$, so $b - a \in \mathbb{N}^+$, so $g^{b-a} \in S$. By the choice of d , we know that $d \leq b - a$. By Exercise 1.25, $d \leq b - a < b$, so $0 < d < b < n$.

We can now list d distinct elements of $\langle g \rangle$:

$$g, g^2, g^3, \dots, g^d = e. \tag{8}$$

Using Lemma 2.56 again, we extrapolate that $g^{d+1} = g, g^{d+2} = g^2$, etc., so

$$\langle g \rangle = \{e, g, g^2, \dots, g^{d-1}\}.$$

We see that $|\langle g \rangle| = d$, but this contradicts the assumption that $n = \text{ord}(g) = |\langle g \rangle|$.

(B) Let $S = \{m \in \mathbb{N}^+ : g^m = e\}$. Is S non-empty? Since $\langle g \rangle < \infty$, there must exist $a, b \in \mathbb{N}^+$ such that $a < b$ and $g^a = g^b$. Using the inverse property and substitution, $g^0 = e =$

$g^b (g^a)^{-1}$. By Lemma 2.56, $g^0 = g^{b-a}$. By definition, $b - a \in \mathbb{N}^+$. Hence S is non-empty.

By the well-ordering property of \mathbb{N} , there exists a smallest element of S ; call it d . Since $\langle g \rangle$ contains n elements, $1 < d \leq n$. If $d < n$, that would contradict assertion (A) of this theorem (with $a = 0$ and $b = d$). Hence $d = n$, and $g^n = e$, and we have shown (A).

- (C) In (B), S is the set of all positive integers m such that $g^m = e$; we let the smallest element be d , and thus $d \leq n$. On the other hand, (A) tells us that we cannot have $d < n$; otherwise, $g^d = g^0 = e$. Hence, $n \leq d$. We already had $d \leq n$, so the two must be equal.
- (D) Let $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Assume that $n \mid (a - b)$. Let $q \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $nq = a - b$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} g^b &= g^b \cdot e = g^b \cdot e^q \\ &= g^b \cdot (g^n)^q = g^b \cdot g^{nq} \\ &= g^b \cdot g^{a-b} = g^{b+(a-b)} = g^a. \end{aligned}$$

□

We conclude therefore that, at least when they are finite, cyclic groups are aptly named: increasing powers of g generate new elements until the power reaches n , in which case $g^n = e$ and we “cycle around”.

Exercises.

Exercise 2.60. Recall from Example 2.54 the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Express A as a power of the other non-identity matrices of the group.

Exercise 2.61. Complete the proof of Lemma 2.56(C).

Exercise 2.62. Fill in each blank of Figure 2.7 with the justification or statement.

Exercise 2.63. Show that any group of 3 elements is cyclic.

Exercise 2.64. Is the Klein 4-group (Exercise 2.32 on page 52) cyclic? What about the cyclic group of order 4?

Exercise 2.65. Show that \mathbb{Q} is not cyclic.

Exercise 2.66. Use a fact from linear algebra to explain why $\text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R})$ is not cyclic.

2.4: The roots of unity

One of the major motivations in the development of group theory was to study roots of polynomials. A polynomial, of course, has the form

$$ax + b, \quad ax^2 + bx + c, \quad ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d, \quad \dots$$

Let G be a group, and $g \in G$. Let $d, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and assume $\text{ord}(g) = d$.

Claim: $g^n = e$ if and only if $d \mid n$.

Proof:

1. Assume that $g^n = e$.
 - (a) By _____, there exist $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $n = qd + r$ and $0 \leq r < d$.
 - (b) By _____, $g^{qd+r} = e$.
 - (c) By _____, $g^{qd} g^r = e$.
 - (d) By _____, $(g^d)^q g^r = e$.
 - (e) By _____, $e^q g^r = e$.
 - (f) By _____, $e g^r = e$. By the identity property, $g^r = e$.
 - (g) By _____, d is the *smallest* positive integer such that $g^d = e$.
 - (h) Since _____, it cannot be that r is positive. Hence, $r = 0$.
 - (i) By _____, $g = qd$. By definition, then $d \mid n$.
2. Now we show the converse. Assume that _____.
 - (a) By definition of divisibility, _____.
 - (b) By substitution, $g^n =$ _____.
 - (c) By Lemma 2.56, the right hand side of that equation can be rewritten as to _____.
 - (d) Recall that $\text{ord}(g) = d$. By Theorem 2.59, $g^d = e$, so we can rewrite the right hand side again as _____.
 - (e) A little more simplification turns the right hand side into _____, which obviously simplifies to e .
 - (f) By _____, then, $g^n = e$.
3. We showed first that if $g^n = e$, then $d \mid n$; we then showed that _____. This proves the claim.

Figure 2.7. Material for Exercise 2.62

A **root** of a polynomial $f(x)$ is any a such that $f(a) = 0$. For example, if $f(x) = x^4 - 1$, then 1 and -1 are both roots of f . However, they are not the *only* roots of f ! For the full explanation, you'll need to read about polynomial rings and ideals in Chapters 7 and 8, but we can take some first steps in that direction already.

Imaginary and complex numbers

First, notice that f factors as $f(x) = (x - 1)(x + 1)(x^2 + 1)$. The roots 1 and -1 show up in the linear factors, and they're the only possible roots of those factors. So, if f has other roots, we would expect them to be roots of $x^2 + 1$. However, the square of a real number is nonnegative; adding 1 forces it to be positive. So, $x^2 + 1$ has no roots in \mathbb{R} .

Let's make a root up, anyway. If it doesn't make sense, we should find out soon enough. Let's call this polynomial $g(x) = x^2 + 1$, and say that g has a root, which we'll call i , for "imaginary". Since i is a root of g , we have the equation

$$0 = g(i) = i^2 + 1,$$

or $i^2 = -1$.

We'll create a new set of numbers by adding i to the set \mathbb{R} . Since \mathbb{R} is a monoid under multiplication and a group under addition, we'd like to preserve those properties as well. This

means we have to define multiplication and addition for our new set, and maybe add more objects, too.

We start with $\mathbb{R} \cup \{i\}$. Does multiplication add any new elements? Since $i^2 = -1$, and $-1 \in \mathbb{R}$ already, we're okay there. On the other hand, for any $b \in \mathbb{R}$, we'd like to multiply b and i . Since bi is not already in our new set, we'll have to add it if we want to keep multiplication closed. Our set has now expanded to $\mathbb{R} \cup \{bi : b \in \mathbb{R}\}$.

Let's look at addition. Our new set has real numbers like 1 and "imaginary" numbers like $2i$; if addition is to satisfy closure, we need $1 + 2i$ to be in the set, too. That's not the case yet, so we have to extend our set by $a + bi$ for any $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$. That gives us

$$\mathbb{R} \cup \{bi : b \in \mathbb{R}\} \cup \{a + bi : a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

If you think about it, the first two sets are in the third; just let $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ and you get bi or a , respectively. So, we can simplify our new set to

$$\{a + bi : a, b \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Do we need anything else?

We haven't checked closure of addition. In fact, we still haven't *defined* addition of complex numbers. We will borrow an idea from polynomials, and add complex numbers by adding like terms; that is, $(a + bi) + (c + di) = (a + c) + (b + d)i$. Closure implies that $a + c \in \mathbb{R}$ and $b + d \in \mathbb{R}$, so this is just another expression in the form already described. In fact, we can also see what additive inverses look like; after all, $(a + bi) + (-a - bi) = 0$. We don't have to add any new objects to our set to maintain the group structure of addition.

We also haven't checked closure of multiplication in this larger set — or even defined it, really. Again, let's borrow an idea from polynomials, and multiply complex numbers using the distributive property; that is,

$$(a + bi)(c + di) = ac + adi + bci + bdi^2.$$

Remember that $i^2 = -1$, and we can combine like terms, so the expression above simplifies to

$$(a + bi)(c + di) = (ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i.$$

Since $ac - bd \in \mathbb{R}$ and $ad + bc \in \mathbb{R}$, this is just another expression in the form already described. Again, we don't have to add any new objects to our set.

Definition 2.67. The **complex numbers** are the set

$$\mathbb{C} = \{a + bi : a, b \in \mathbb{R}, i^2 = -1\}.$$

The **real part** of $a + bi$ is a , and the **imaginary part** is b .

We can now state with confidence that we have found what we wanted to obtain.

Theorem 2.68. \mathbb{C} is a monoid under multiplication, and an abelian group under addition.

Proof. Let $x, y, z \in \mathbb{C}$. Write $x = a + bi$, $y = c + di$, and $z = e + fi$, for some $a, b, c, d, e, f \in \mathbb{R}$. Let's look at multiplication first.

closure? We built \mathbb{C} to be closed under multiplication, so the discussion above suffices.

associative? We need to show that

$$(xy)z = x(yz). \quad (9)$$

Expanding the product on the left, we have

$$[(a + bi)(c + di)](e + fi) = [(ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i](e + fi).$$

Expand again, and we get

$$\begin{aligned} [(a + bi)(c + di)](e + fi) &= [(ac - bd)e - (ad + bc)f] \\ &\quad + [(ac - bd)f + (ad + bc)e]i. \end{aligned}$$

Now let's look at the product on the right of equation (9). Expanding it, we have

$$(a + bi)[(c + di)(e + fi)] = (a + bi)[(ce - df) + (cf + de)i].$$

Expand again, and we get

$$\begin{aligned} (a + bi)[(c + di)(e + fi)] &= [a(ce - df) - b(cf + de)] \\ &\quad + [a(cf + de) + b(ce - df)]i. \end{aligned}$$

If you look carefully, you will see that both expansions resulted in the same complex number:

$$(ace - bde - adf - bcf) + (acf - bdf + ade + bce)i.$$

Thus, multiplication in \mathbb{C} is associative.

identity? We claim that $1 \in \mathbb{R}$ is the multiplicative identity even for \mathbb{C} . Recall that we can write $1 = 1 + 0i$. Then,

$$1x = (1 + 0i)(a + bi) = (1a - 0b) + (1b + 0a)i = a + bi = x.$$

Since x was arbitrary in \mathbb{C} , it must be that 1 is, in fact, the identity.

We have shown that \mathbb{C} is a monoid under multiplication. What about addition; it is a group? We leave that to the exercises. \square

There are *lot* of wonderful properties of \mathbb{C} that we could discuss. For example, you can see that the roots of $x^2 + 1$ lie in \mathbb{C} , but what of the roots of $x^2 + 2$? It turns out that they're in there, too. In fact, *every* polynomial of degree n with real coefficients has n roots in \mathbb{C} ! We need a lot more theory to discuss that, however, so we pass over it for the time being. In any case, we can now talk about a group that is both interesting and important.

Remark 2.69. You may wonder if we really *can* just make up some number i , and build a new set by adjoining it to \mathbb{R} . Isn't that just a little, oh, *imaginary*? Actually, no, it is quite concrete, and we can provide two very sound justifications.

First, mathematicians typically model the oscillation of a pendulum by a differential equation of the form $y'' + ay = 0$. As any book in the subject explains, we have good reason to solve such *differential* equations by resorting to *auxiliary polynomial* equations of the form $r^2 + a = 0$. The solutions to this equation are $r = \pm i\sqrt{a}$, so unless the oscillation of a pendulum is “imaginary”, i is quite “real”.

Second, we can construct from the real numbers a set that looks an awful lot like these purported complex numbers, using a very sensible approach, and we can even show that this set is isomorphic to the complex numbers in all the ways that we would like. That’s a bit beyond us; you will learn more in Section 8.4.

The complex plane

We can diagram the real numbers along a line. In fact, it’s quite easy to argue that what makes real numbers “real” is precisely the fact that they measure location or distance along a line. That’s only one-dimensional, and you’ve seen before that we can do something similar on the plane or in space using \mathbb{R}^2 and \mathbb{R}^3 .

What about the complex numbers? By definition, any complex number is the sum of its real and imaginary parts. We cannot simplify $a + bi$ any further using this representation, much as we cannot simplify the point $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ any further. Since \mathbb{R}^2 forms a *vector space* over \mathbb{R} , does \mathbb{C} also form a vector space over \mathbb{R} ? In fact, it does! Here’s a quick reminder of what makes a vector space:

- addition of vectors must satisfy closure and the associative, commutative, identity, and inverse properties;
- multiplication of vectors *by scalars* must have an identity scalar, must be associative on the scalars, and must satisfy the properties of distribution of scalars to vectors and vice-versa.

The properties for addition of vectors are precisely the properties of a group — and Theorem 2.68 tells us that \mathbb{C} is a group under addition! All that remains is to show that \mathbb{C} satisfies the required properties of multiplication. You will do that in Exercise 2.83.

Right now, we are more interested in the *geometric* implications of this relationship. We’ve already hinted that \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{R}^2 have a similar structure. Let’s start with the notion of *dimension*. Do you remember what that word means? Essentially, the dimension of a vector space is the number of *basis vectors* needed to describe a vector space. Do \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{R}^2 have the same dimension over \mathbb{R} ? For that, we need to identify a *basis* of \mathbb{C} over \mathbb{R} .

Theorem 2.70. \mathbb{C} is a vector space over \mathbb{R} with basis $\{1, i\}$.

Proof. We have already discussed why \mathbb{C} is a vector space over \mathbb{R} ; we still have to show that $\{0, i\}$ is a basis of \mathbb{C} . This is straightforward from the definition of \mathbb{C} , as any element can be written in terms of the basis elements as $a + bi = a \cdot 1 + b \cdot i$. \square

We see from Theorem 2.70 that \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{R}^2 do have the same dimension! After all, any point of \mathbb{R}^2 can be written as $(a, b) = a(1, 0) + b(0, 1)$, so a basis of \mathbb{R}^2 is $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$.

This will hopefully prompt you to realize that \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{R}^2 are identical as vector spaces. For our purposes, what matters that we can map any point of \mathbb{C} to a unique point of \mathbb{R}^2 , and vice-versa.

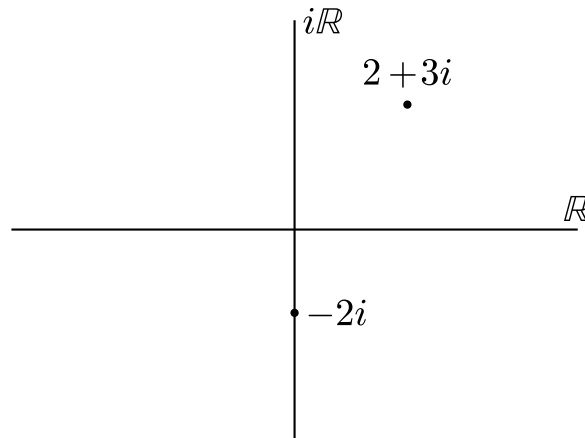


Figure 2.8. Two elements of \mathbb{C} , visualized as points on the complex plane

Theorem 2.71. There is a one-to-one, onto function from \mathbb{C} to \mathbb{R}^2 that maps the basis vectors 1 to $(1, 0)$ and i to $(0, 1)$.

Proof. Let $\varphi : \mathbb{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ by $\varphi(a + bi) = (a, b)$. That is, we map a complex number to \mathbb{R}^2 by sending the real part to the first entry (the x -ordinate) and the imaginary part to the second entry (the y -ordinate). As desired, $\varphi(1) = (1, 0)$ and $\varphi(i) = (0, 1)$.

Is this a bijection? We see that φ is one-to-one by the fact that if $\varphi(a + bi) = \varphi(c + di)$, then $(a, b) = (c, d)$; equality of points in \mathbb{R}^2 implies that $a = c$ and $b = d$; equality of complex numbers implies that $a + bi = c + di$. We see that φ is onto by the fact that for any $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$, $\varphi(a + bi) = (a, b)$. \square

Since \mathbb{R}^2 has a nice, geometric representation as the x - y plane, we can represent complex numbers in the same way. That motivates our definition of the **complex plane**, which is nothing more than a visualization of \mathbb{C} in \mathbb{R}^2 .

Take a look at Figure 2.8. We have labeled the x -axis as \mathbb{R} and the y -axis as $i\mathbb{R}$. We call the former the **real axis** and the latter the **imaginary axis** of the complex plane. This agrees with our mapping above, which sent the real part of a complex number to the x -ordinate, and the imaginary part to the y -ordinate. Thus, the complex number $2 + 3i$ corresponds to the point $(2, 3)$, while the complex number $-2i$ corresponds to the point $(0, -2)$.

We could say a great deal about the complex plane, but that would distract us from our main goal, which is to proceed further in group theory. Even so, we should not neglect one important and beautiful point.

Roots of unity

Any root of the polynomial $f(x) = x^n - 1$ is called a **root of unity**. These are very important in the study of polynomial roots. At least some of them satisfy a very nice form.

Theorem 2.72. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. The complex number

$$\omega = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right)$$

is a root of $f(x) = x^n - 1$.

To prove Theorem 2.72, we need a different property of ω .

Lemma 2.73. If ω is defined as in Theorem 2.72, then

$$\omega^m = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right)$$

for every $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

Proof. We proceed by induction on m . For the *inductive base*, the definition of ω shows that ω^1 has the desired form. For the *inductive hypothesis*, assume that ω^m has the desired form; in the *inductive step*, we need to show that

$$\omega^{m+1} = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi(m+1)}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi(m+1)}{n}\right).$$

To see why this is true, use the trigonometric sum identities $\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha \cos\beta - \sin\alpha \sin\beta$ and $\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha \cos\beta + \sin\beta \cos\alpha$ to rewrite ω^{m+1} , like so:

$$\begin{aligned} \omega^{m+1} &= \omega^m \cdot \omega \\ &\stackrel{\text{ind. hyp.}}{=} \left[\cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \right] \\ &\quad \cdot \left[\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) \right] \\ &= \cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) \\ &\quad + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) \\ &= \left[\cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) \right] \\ &\quad + i \left[\sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{n}\right) \right] \\ &= \cos\left(\frac{2\pi(m+1)}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi(m+1)}{n}\right). \end{aligned}$$

□

Once we have Lemma 2.73, proving Theorem 2.72 is spectacularly easy.

Proof of Theorem 2.72. Substitution and the lemma give us

$$\begin{aligned}\omega^n - 1 &= \left[\cos\left(\frac{2\pi n}{n}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi n}{n}\right) \right] - 1 \\ &= \cos 2\pi + i \sin 2\pi - 1 \\ &= (1 + i \cdot 0) - 1 = 0,\end{aligned}$$

so ω is indeed a root of $x^n - 1$. □

As promised, $\langle \omega \rangle$ gives us a nice group.

Theorem 2.74. The n th roots of unity are $\Omega_n = \{1, \omega, \omega^2, \dots, \omega^{n-1}\}$, where ω is defined as in Theorem 2.72. They form a cyclic group of order n under multiplication.

The theorem does not claim merely that Ω_n is a list of *some* n th roots of unity; it claims that Ω_n is a list of *all* n th roots of unity. Our proof is going to cheat a little bit, because we don't quite have the machinery to prove that Ω_n is an exhaustive list of the roots of unity. We will eventually, however, and you should be able to follow the general idea now. The idea is called *unique factorization*. Basically, let f be a polynomial of degree n . Suppose that we have n roots of f ; call them $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$. The parts you have to take on faith (for now) are twofold. First, $x - \alpha_i$ is a factor of f for each α_i . Each linear factor adds one to the degree of a polynomial, and f has degree n , so the number of linear factors cannot be more than n . Second, and this is not quite so clear, there is only one way to factor f into linear polynomials

(You can see this in the example above with $x^4 - 1$, but Theorem 7.41 on page 206 will have the details. You should have seen that theorem in your precalculus studies, and since it doesn't depend on anything in this section, the reasoning is not circular.)

If you're okay with that, then you're okay with everything else.

Proof. For $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$, we use the associative property of multiplication in \mathbb{C} and the commutative property of multiplication in \mathbb{N}^+ :

$$(\omega^m)^n - 1 = \omega^{mn} - 1 = \omega^{nm} - 1 = (\omega^n)^m - 1 = 1^m - 1 = 0.$$

Hence ω^m is a root of unity for any $m \in \mathbb{N}^+$. If $\omega^m = \omega^\ell$, then

$$\cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi \ell}{n}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{n}\right) = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi \ell}{n}\right),$$

and we know from trigonometry that this is possible only if

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2\pi m}{n} &= \frac{2\pi \ell}{n} + 2\pi k \\ \frac{2\pi}{n}(m - \ell) &= 2\pi k \\ m - \ell &= kn.\end{aligned}$$

That is, $m - \ell$ is a multiple of n . Since Ω_n lists only those powers from 0 to $n - 1$, the powers must be distinct, so Ω_n contains n distinct roots of unity. (See also Exercise 2.82.) As there can be at most n distinct roots, Ω_n is a complete list of n th roots of unity.

Now we show that Ω_n is a cyclic group.

- (closure) Let $x, y \in \Omega_n$; you will show in Exercise 2.79 that $xy \in \Omega_n$.
- (associativity) The complex numbers are associative under multiplication; since $\Omega_n \subseteq \mathbb{C}$, the elements of Ω_n are also associative under multiplication.
- (identity) The multiplicative identity in \mathbb{C} is 1. This is certainly an element of Ω_n , since $1^n = 1$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$.
- (inverses) Let $x \in \Omega_n$; you will show in Exercise 2.80 that $x^{-1} \in \Omega_n$.
- (cyclic) Theorem 2.72 tells us that $\omega \in \Omega_n$; the remaining elements are powers of ω . Hence $\Omega_n = \langle \omega \rangle$.

□

Combined with the explanation we gave earlier of the complex plane, Theorem 2.74 gives us a wonderful symmetry for the roots of unity.

Example 2.75. We'll consider the case where $n = 7$. According to the theorem, the 7th roots of unity are $\Omega_7 = \{1, \omega, \omega^2, \dots, \omega^6\}$ where

$$\omega = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{7}\right).$$

According to Lemma 2.73,

$$\omega^m = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi m}{7}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{2\pi m}{7}\right),$$

where $m = 0, 1, \dots, 6$. By substitution, the angles we are looking at are

$$0, \frac{2\pi}{7}, \frac{4\pi}{7}, \frac{6\pi}{7}, \frac{8\pi}{7}, \frac{10\pi}{7}, \frac{12\pi}{7}.$$

Recall that in the complex plane, any complex number $a + bi$ corresponds to the point (a, b) on \mathbb{R}^2 . The Pythagorean identity $\cos^2 \alpha + \sin^2 \alpha = 1$ tells us that the coordinates of the roots of unity lie on the unit circle. Since the angles are at equal intervals, they divide the unit circle into seven equal arcs! See Figure 2.9.

Although we used $n = 7$ in this example, we used no special properties of that number in the argument. That tells us that this property is true for any n : the n th roots of unity divide the unit circle of the complex plane into n equal arcs!

Here's an interesting question: is ω the only generator of Ω_n ? In fact, no. A natural follow-up: are *all* the elements of Ω_n generators of the group? Likewise, no. Well, which ones are? We are not yet ready to give a precise criterion that signals which elements generate Ω_n , but they do have a special name.

Definition 2.76. We call any generator of Ω_n a **primitive n th root of unity**.

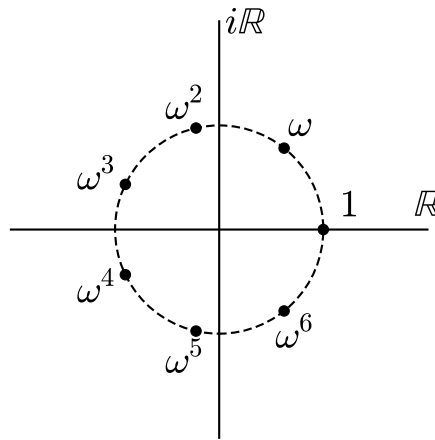


Figure 2.9. The seventh roots of unity, on the complex plane

Exercises.

Unless stated otherwise, $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and ω is a primitive n -th root of unity.

Exercise 2.77. Show that \mathbb{C} is a group under addition.

Exercise 2.78.

- Find all the primitive square roots of unity, all the primitive cube roots of unity, and all the primitive quartic (fourth) roots of unity.
- Sketch *all* the square roots of unity on a complex plane. (Not just the primitive ones, but all.) Repeat for the cube and quartic roots of unity, each on a separate plane.
- Are any cube roots of unity *not* primitive? what about quartic roots of unity?

Exercise 2.79.

- Suppose that a and b are both positive powers of ω . Adapt Lemma 2.73 to show that ab is also a power of ω .
- Explain why this shows that Ω_n is closed under multiplication.

Exercise 2.80.

- Let ω be a 14th root of unity; let $\alpha = \omega^5$, and $\beta = \omega^{14-5} = \omega^9$. Show that $\alpha\beta = 1$.
- More generally, let ω be a primitive n -th root of unity. Let $\alpha = \omega^a$, where $a \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a < n$. Show that $\beta = \omega^{n-a}$ satisfies $\alpha\beta = 1$.
- Explain why this shows that every element of Ω_n has an inverse.

Exercise 2.81. Suppose β is a root of $x^n - b$.

- Show that $\omega\beta$ is also a root of $x^n - b$, where ω is *any* n th root of unity.
- Use (a) and the idea of unique factorization that we described right before the proof of Theorem 2.74 to explain how we can use β and Ω_n to list all n roots of $x^n - b$.

Exercise 2.82.

- For each $\omega \in \Omega_6$, find $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $\omega = x + yi$. Plot all the points (x, y) on a graph.

- (b) Do you notice any pattern to the points? If not, repeat part (a) for Ω_7 , Ω_8 , etc., until you see the pattern.

Exercise 2.83.

- (a) Show that \mathbb{C} satisfies the requirements of a vector space for scalar multiplication.
 (b) Show that \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{R}^2 are isomorphic as monoids under addition.

Exercise 2.84. Let i be the imaginary number such that $i^2 = -1$, and let Q_8 be the set of **quaternions**, defined by the matrices $\{\pm 1, \pm i, \pm j, \pm k\}$ where

$$\mathbf{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{i} = \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{j} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

- (a) Show that $\mathbf{i}^2 = \mathbf{j}^2 = \mathbf{k}^2 = -\mathbf{1}$.
 (b) Show that $\mathbf{ij} = \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{jk} = \mathbf{i}$, and $\mathbf{ik} = -\mathbf{j}$.
 (c) Use (a) and (b) to build the Cayley table of Q_8 . (In this case, the Cayley table is the multiplication table.)
 (c) Show that Q_8 is a group under matrix multiplication.
 (d) Explain why Q_8 is not an abelian group.

Exercise 2.85. In Exercise 2.84 you showed that the quaternions form a group under matrix multiplication. Verify that $H = \{1, -1, \mathbf{i}, -\mathbf{i}\}$ is a cyclic group. What elements generate H ?

Exercise 2.86. Show that Q_8 is not cyclic.

Chapter 3:

Subgroups

A subset of a group is not necessarily a group; for example, $\{2, 4\} \subset \mathbb{Z}$, but $\{2, 4\}$ doesn't satisfy any properties of an additive group unless we change the definition of addition. Some subsets of groups are groups, and one of the keys to algebra consists in understanding the relationship between subgroups and groups.

We start this chapter by describing the properties that guarantee that a subset is a “subgroup” of a group (Section 3.1). We then explore how subgroups create *cosets*, equivalence classes within the group that perform a role similar to division of integers (Section 3.2). It turns out that in finite groups, we can count the number of these equivalence classes quite easily (Section 3.3).

Cosets open the door to a special class of groups called *quotient groups*, (Sections 3.4), one of which is a very natural, very useful tool (Section 3.5) that will eventually allow us to devise some “easy” solutions for problems in Number Theory (Chapter 6).

3.1: Subgroups

Definition 3.1. Let G be a group and $H \subseteq G$ be nonempty. If H is also a group under the same operation as G , then H is a **subgroup** of G . If $\{e\} \subsetneq H \subsetneq G$, then H is a **proper subgroup** of G .

Notation 3.2. If H is a subgroup of G , then we write $H < G$.

Example 3.3. Check that the following statements are true by verifying that the properties of a group are satisfied.

- (a) \mathbb{Z} is a subgroup of \mathbb{Q} .
- (b) Let $4\mathbb{Z} := \{4m : m \in \mathbb{Z}\} = \{\dots, -4, 0, 4, 8, \dots\}$. Then $4\mathbb{Z}$ is a subgroup of \mathbb{Z} .
- (c) Let $d \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $d\mathbb{Z} := \{dm : m \in \mathbb{Z}\}$. Then $d\mathbb{Z}$ is a subgroup of \mathbb{Z} .
- (d) $\langle i \rangle$ is a subgroup of \mathbb{Q}_8 .

Checking all four properties of a group is cumbersome. It would be convenient to verify that a set is a subgroup by checking fewer properties. It also makes sense that if a group is abelian, then its subgroups would be abelian, so we shouldn't have to check the abelian property. In that case, which properties *must* we check to decide whether a subset is a subgroup?

We can eliminate the associative and abelian properties from consideration. In fact, the operation remains associative and commutative for any subset.

Lemma 3.4. Let G be a group and $H \subseteq G$. Then H satisfies the associative property of a group. In addition, if G is abelian, then H satisfies the commutative property of an abelian group. So, we only need to check the closure, identity, and inverse properties to ensure that G is a group.

Be careful: Lemma 3.4 neither assumes nor concludes that H is a subgroup. The other three properties may not be satisfied: H may not be closed; it may lack an identity; or some element may

lack an inverse. The lemma merely states that any subset automatically satisfies two important properties of a group.

Proof. If $H = \emptyset$, then the lemma is true trivially.

Otherwise, $H \neq \emptyset$. Let $a, b, c \in H$. Since $H \subseteq G$, we have $a, b, c \in G$. Since the operation is associative in G , $a(bc) = (ab)c$; that is, the operation remains associative for H . Likewise, if G is abelian, then $ab = ba$; that is, the operation also remains commutative for H . \square

Lemma 3.4 has reduced the number of requirements for a subgroup from four to three. Amazingly, we can simplify this further, to *only one criterion*.

Theorem 3.5 (The Subgroup Theorem). Let $H \subseteq G$ be nonempty. The following are equivalent:

- (A) $H < G$;
- (B) for every $x, y \in H$, we have $xy^{-1} \in H$.

Notation 3.6. If G were an additive group, we would write $x - y$ instead of xy^{-1} .

Proof. By Exercise 2.33 on page 52, (A) implies (B).

Conversely, assume (B). By Lemma 3.4, we need to show only that H satisfies the closure, identity, and inverse properties. We do this slightly out of order:

identity: Let $x \in H$. By (B), $e = x \cdot x^{-1} \in H$.¹²

inverse: Let $x \in H$. Since H satisfies the identity property, $e \in H$. By (B), $x^{-1} = e \cdot x^{-1} \in H$.

closure: Let $x, y \in H$. Since H satisfies the inverse property, $y^{-1} \in H$. By (B), $xy = x \cdot (y^{-1})^{-1} \in H$.

Since H satisfies the closure, identity, and inverse properties, $H < G$. \square

Let's take a look at the Subgroup Theorem in action.

Example 3.7. Let $d \in \mathbb{Z}$. We claim that $d\mathbb{Z} < \mathbb{Z}$. (Here $d\mathbb{Z}$ is the set defined in Example 3.3.) *Why?* Let's use the Subgroup Theorem.

Let $x, y \in d\mathbb{Z}$. If we can show that $x - y \in d\mathbb{Z}$, we will satisfy part (B) of the Subgroup Theorem. The theorem states that (B) is equivalent to (A); that is, $d\mathbb{Z}$ is a group. That's what we want, so let's try to show that $x - y \in d\mathbb{Z}$; that is, $x - y$ is an integer multiple of d .

Since x and y are by definition integer multiples of d , we can write $x = dm$ and $y = dn$ for some $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Note that $-y = -(dn) = d(-n)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= x + (-y) = dm + d(-n) \\ &= d(m + (-n)) = d(m - n). \end{aligned}$$

Now, $m - n \in \mathbb{Z}$, so $x - y = d(m - n) \in d\mathbb{Z}$.

We did it! We took two integer multiples of d , and showed that their difference is also an integer multiple of d . By the Subgroup Theorem, $d\mathbb{Z} < \mathbb{Z}$.

The following geometric example gives a visual image of what a subgroup “looks” like.

¹²Notice that here we are replacing the y in (B) with x . This is fine, since nothing in (B) requires x and y to be distinct.

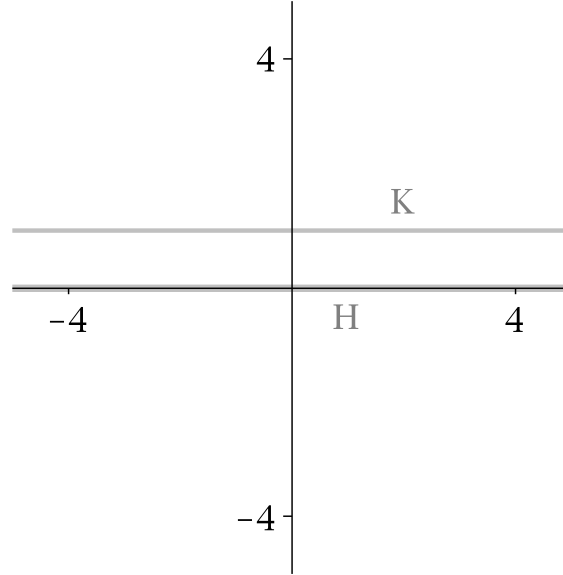


Figure 3.1. H and K from Example 3.8

Example 3.8. Recall that \mathbb{R} is a group under addition, and let G be the direct product $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$. Geometrically, this is the set of points in the x - y plane. As is usual with a direct product, we define an addition for elements of G in the natural way: for $P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$ and $P_2 = (x_2, y_2)$, define

$$P_1 + P_2 = (x_1 + x_2, y_1 + y_2).$$

Let H be the x -axis; a set definition would be, $H = \{x \in G : x = (a, 0) \exists a \in \mathbb{R}\}$. We claim that $H < G$. *Why?* Use the Subgroup Theorem! Let $P, Q \in H$. By the definition of H , we can write $P = (p, 0)$ and $Q = (q, 0)$ where $p, q \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$P - Q = P + (-Q) = (p, 0) + (-q, 0) = (p - q, 0).$$

Membership in H requires the first ordinate to be real, and the second to be zero. As $P - Q$ satisfies these requirements, $P - Q \in H$. The Subgroup Theorem implies that $H < G$.

Let K be the line $y = 1$; a set definition would be, $K = \{x \in G : x = (a, 1) \exists a \in \mathbb{R}\}$. We claim that $K \not< G$. *Why not?* Again, use the Subgroup Theorem! Let $P, Q \in K$. By the definition of K , we can write $P = (p, 1)$ and $Q = (q, 1)$ where $p, q \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$P - Q = P + (-Q) = (p, 1) + (-q, -1) = (p - q, 0).$$

Membership in K requires the second ordinate to be one, but the second ordinate of $P - Q$ is zero, not one. Since $P - Q \notin K$, the Subgroup Theorem tells us that K is not a subgroup of G .

There's a more intuitive explanation as to why K is not a subgroup; it doesn't contain the origin. In a direct product of groups, the identity is formed using the identities of the component groups. In this case, the identity is $(0, 0)$, which is *not* in K .

Figure 3.1 gives a visualization of H and K . You will diagram another subgroup of G in Exercise 3.16.

Examples 3.7 and 3.8 give us examples of how the Subgroup Theorem verifies subgroups of *abelian* groups. Two interesting examples of nonabelian subgroups appear in D_3 .

Example 3.9. Recall D_3 from Section 2.2. Both $H = \{\iota, \varphi\}$ and $K = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\}$ are subgroups of D_3 . *Why?* Certainly $H, K \subsetneq G$, and Theorem 2.55 on page 64 tells us that H and K are groups, since $H = \langle \varphi \rangle$, and $K = \langle \rho \rangle$.

If a group satisfies a given property, a natural question to ask is whether its subgroups also satisfy this property. Cyclic groups are a good example: is every subgroup of a cyclic group also cyclic? The answer relies on the Division Theorem (Theorem 1.34 on page 15).

Theorem 3.10. Subgroups of cyclic groups are also cyclic.

Proof. Let G be a cyclic group, and $H < G$. From the fact that G is cyclic, choose $g \in G$ such that $G = \langle g \rangle$.

First we must find a candidate generator of H . If $H = \{e\}$, then $H = \langle e \rangle = \langle g^0 \rangle$, and we are done. So assume there exists $x \in H$ such that $x \neq e$. By inclusion, every element $x \in H$ is also an element of G , which is generated by g , so $x = g^n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Without loss of generality, we may assume that $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$; after all, we just showed that we can choose $x \neq e$, so $n \neq 0$, and if $n \notin \mathbb{N}$, then closure of H implies that $x^{-1} = g^{-n} \in H$, so choose x^{-1} instead.

Now, if you were to take all the positive powers of g that appear in H , which would you expect to generate H ? Certainly not the larger ones! The ideal candidate for the generator would be the smallest positive power of g in H , if it exists. Let S be the set of positive natural numbers i such that $g^i \in H$; in other words, $S = \{i \in \mathbb{N}^+ : g^i \in H\}$. From the well-ordering of \mathbb{N} , there exists a smallest element of S ; call it d , and assign $h = g^d$.

We claim that $H = \langle h \rangle$. Let $x \in H$; then $x \in G$. By hypothesis, G is cyclic, so $x = g^a$ for some $a \in \mathbb{Z}$. By the Division Theorem, we know that there exist unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that

- $a = qd + r$, and
- $0 \leq r < d$.

Let $y = g^r$; by Exercise 2.61, we can rewrite this as

$$y = g^r = g^{a-qd} = g^a g^{-(qd)} = x \cdot (g^d)^{-q} = x \cdot h^{-q}.$$

Now, $x \in H$ by definition, and $h^{-q} \in H$ by closure and the existence of inverses, so by closure $y = x \cdot h^{-q} \in H$ as well. We chose d as the smallest positive power of g in H , and we just showed that $g^r \in H$. Recall that $0 \leq r < d$. If $0 < r$; then $g^r \in H$, so $r \in S$. But $r < d$, which contradicts the choice of d as the smallest element of S . Hence r cannot be positive; instead, $r = 0$ and $x = g^a = g^{qd} = h^q \in \langle h \rangle$.

Since x was arbitrary in H , every element of H is in $\langle h \rangle$; that is, $H \subseteq \langle h \rangle$. Since $h \in H$ and H is a group, closure implies that $H \supseteq \langle h \rangle$, so $H = \langle h \rangle$. In other words, H is cyclic. \square

We again look to \mathbb{Z} for an example.

Example 3.11. Recall from Example 2.53 on page 63 that \mathbb{Z} is cyclic; in fact $\mathbb{Z} = \langle 1 \rangle$. By Theorem 3.10, $d\mathbb{Z}$ is cyclic. In fact, $d\mathbb{Z} = \langle d \rangle$. Can you find another generator of $d\mathbb{Z}$?

Exercises.

Let G be any group and $g \in G$.

Claim: $\langle g \rangle < G$.

Proof:

1. Let $x, y \in \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$.
2. By definition of $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$, there exist $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $x = g^m$ and $y = g^n$.
3. By $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$, $y^{-1} = g^{-n}$.
4. By $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$, $xy^{-1} = g^{m+(-n)} = g^{m-n}$.
5. By $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$, $xy^{-1} \in \langle g \rangle$.
6. By $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$, $\langle g \rangle < G$.

Figure 3.2. Material for Exercise 3.14

Exercise 3.12. Recall that Ω_n , the n th roots of unity, is the cyclic group $\langle \omega \rangle$.

- (a) Compute Ω_2 and Ω_4 , and explain why $\Omega_2 < \Omega_4$.
- (b) Compute Ω_8 , and explain why both $\Omega_2 < \Omega_8$ and $\Omega_4 < \Omega_8$.
- (b) Explain why, if $d \mid n$, then $\Omega_d < \Omega_n$.

Exercise 3.13. Show that even though the Klein 4-group is not cyclic, each of its proper subgroups is cyclic (see Exercises 2.32 on page 52 and 2.64 on page 69).

Exercise 3.14.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 3.2 with the appropriate justification or expression.
- (b) Why would someone take this approach, rather than using the definition of a subgroup?

Exercise 3.15.

- (a) Let $D_n(\mathbb{R}) = \{aI_n : a \in \mathbb{R}\} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$; that is, $D_n(\mathbb{R})$ is the set of all diagonal matrices whose values along the diagonal is constant. Show that $D_n(\mathbb{R}) < \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$. (In case you've forgotten Exercise 2.27, the operation here is addition.)
- (b) Let $D_n^*(\mathbb{R}) = \{aI_n : a \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}\} \subseteq \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$; that is, $D_n^*(\mathbb{R})$ is the set of all non-zero diagonal matrices whose values along the diagonal is constant. Show that $D_n^*(\mathbb{R}) < \text{GL}_n(\mathbb{R})$. (In case you've forgotten Definition 2.5, the operation here is multiplication.)

Exercise 3.16. Let $G = \mathbb{R}^2 := \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$, with addition defined as in Exercise 2.25 and Example 3.8. Let

$$L = \{x \in G : x = (a, a) \exists a \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

- (a) Describe L geometrically.
- (b) Show that $L < G$.
- (c) Suppose $\ell \subseteq G$ is any line. Identify the simplest criterion possible that decides whether $\ell < G$. Justify your answer.

Exercise 3.17. Let G be an abelian group. Let H, K be subgroups of G . Let

$$H + K = \{x + y : x \in H, y \in K\}.$$

Show that $H + K < G$.

Exercise 3.18. Let $H = \{\iota, \varphi\} < D_3$.

Let G be a group and A_1, A_2, \dots, A_m subgroups of G . Let

$$B = A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \cdots \cap A_m.$$

Claim: $B < G$.

Proof:

1. Let $x, y \in \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$.
2. By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $x, y \in A_i$ for all $i = 1, \dots, m$.
3. By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $xy^{-1} \in A_i$ for all $i = 1, \dots, m$.
4. By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $xy^{-1} \in B$.
5. By $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$, $B < G$.

Figure 3.3. Material for Exercise 3.20

- (a) Find a different subgroup K of D_3 with only two elements.
- (b) Let $HK = \{xy : x \in H, y \in K\}$. Show that $HK \not\leq D_3$.
- (c) Why does the result of (b) not contradict the result of Exercise 3.17?

Exercise 3.19. Explain why \mathbb{R} cannot be cyclic.

Exercise 3.20. Fill each blank of Figure 3.3 with the appropriate justification or expression.

Exercise 3.21. Let G be a group and H, K two subgroups of G . Let $A = H \cup K$. Show that A need not be a subgroup of G .

3.2: Cosets

One of the most powerful tools in group theory is that of cosets. Students often have a hard time wrapping their minds around cosets, so we'll start with an introductory example that should give you an idea of how cosets "look" in a group. Then we'll define cosets, and finally look at some of their properties.

The idea

Recall the illustration of how the Division Theorem partitions the integers according to their remainder (Section 1.2). Two aspects of division were critical for this:

- *existence of a remainder*, which implies that every integer belongs to at least one class, which in turn implies that the union of the classes covers \mathbb{Z} ; and
- *uniqueness of the remainder*, which implies that every integer ends up in only one set, so that the classes are disjoint.

Using the vocabulary of groups, recall that $A = 4\mathbb{Z} < \mathbb{Z}$ (page 80). All the elements of B have the form $1 + a$ for some $a \in A$. For example, $-3 = 1 + (-4)$. Likewise, all the elements of C have the form $2 + a$ for some $a \in A$, and all the elements of D have the form $3 + a$ for some $a \in A$. So if we define

$$1 + A := \{1 + a : a \in A\},$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + A &= \{\dots, 1 + (-4), 1 + 0, 1 + 4, 1 + 8, \dots\} \\ &= \{\dots, -3, 1, 5, 9, \dots\} \\ &= B. \end{aligned}$$

Likewise, we can write $A = 0 + A$ and $C = 2 + A$, $D = 3 + A$.

Pursuing this further, you can check that

$$\dots = -3 + A = 1 + A = 5 + A = 9 + A = \dots$$

and so forth. Interestingly, all the sets in the previous line are the same as B ! In addition, $1 + A = 5 + A$, and $1 - 5 = -4 \in A$. The same holds for C : $2 + A = 10 + A$, and $2 - 10 = -8 \in A$. This relationship will prove important at the end of the section.

So the partition by remainders of division by four is related to the subgroup A of multiples of 4. This will become very important in Chapter 6. How can we generalize this phenomenon to other groups, even nonabelian ones?

Definition 3.22. Let G be a group and $A < G$. Let $g \in G$. We define the **left coset of A with g** as

$$gA = \{ga : a \in A\}$$

and the **right coset of A with g** as

$$Ag = \{ag : a \in A\}.$$

As usual, if A is an additive subgroup, we write the left and right cosets of A with g as $g + A$ and $A + g$.

In general, left cosets and right cosets are not equal, partly because the operation might not commute. If we speak of “cosets” without specifying “left” or “right”, we means “left cosets”.

Example 3.23. Recall the group D_3 from Section 2.2 and the subgroup $H = \langle \varphi \rangle = \{e, \varphi\}$ from Example 3.9. In this case,

$$\rho H = \{\rho, \rho\varphi\} \text{ and } H\rho = \{\rho, \varphi\rho\}.$$

Since $\varphi\rho = \rho^2\varphi \neq \rho\varphi$, we see that $\rho H \neq H\rho$.

Sometimes, the left coset and the right coset *are* equal. This is always true in abelian groups, as illustrated by Example 3.24.

Example 3.24. Consider the subgroup $H = \{(a, 0) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}$ of \mathbb{R}^2 from Exercise 3.16. Let $p = (3, -1) \in \mathbb{R}^2$. The coset of H with p is

$$\begin{aligned} p + H &= \{(3, -1) + q : q \in H\} \\ &= \{(3, -1) + (a, 0) : a \in \mathbb{R}\} \\ &= \{(3 + a, -1) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}. \end{aligned}$$

Sketch some of the points in $p + H$, and compare them to your sketch of H in Exercise 3.16. How does the coset compare to the subgroup?

Generalizing this further, every coset of H has the form $p + H$ where $p \in \mathbb{R}^2$. Elements of \mathbb{R}^2 are points, so $p = (x, y)$ for some $x, y \in \mathbb{R}$. The coset of H with p is

$$p + H = \{(x + a, y) : a \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Sketch several more cosets. How would you describe the set of *all* cosets of H in \mathbb{R}^2 ?

The group does not *have* to be abelian in order to have the left and right cosets equal. When deciding if $gA = Ag$, we are not deciding *whether elements of G commute*, but *whether subsets of G are equal*. Returning to D_3 , we can find a subgroup whose left and right cosets are equal even though the group is not abelian and the operation is not commutative.

Example 3.25. Let $K = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\}$; certainly $K < D_3$, after all, $K = \langle \rho \rangle$. In this case, $\alpha K = K\alpha$ for all $\alpha \in D_3$:

α	αK	$K\alpha$
ι	K	K
φ	$\{\varphi, \varphi\rho, \varphi\rho^2\}$	$\{\varphi, \rho\varphi, \rho^2\varphi\}$
ρ	K	K
ρ^2	K	K
$\rho\varphi$	$\{\rho\varphi, (\rho\varphi)\rho, (\rho\varphi)\rho^2\}$	$\{\rho\varphi, \varphi, \rho^2\varphi\}$
$\rho^2\varphi$	$\{\rho^2\varphi, (\rho^2\varphi)\rho, (\rho^2\varphi)\rho^2\}$	$\{\rho^2\varphi, \rho\varphi, \varphi\}$

In each case, the sets φK and $K\varphi$ are equal, even though φ does not commute with ρ . (You should verify these computations by hand.)

Properties of Cosets

We could forgive you for concluding from this that cosets are useful for little more than a generalization of division; after all, you don't realize how powerful division is. The rest of this chapter should correct any such misapprehension; for now, we present some properties of cosets that illustrate further their similarities to division.

Theorem 3.26. The cosets of a subgroup partition the group.

Putting this together with Theorem 1.39 implies another nice result.

Corollary 3.27. Let $A < G$. Define a relation \sim on $x, y \in G$ by

$$x \sim y \iff x \text{ is in the same coset of } A \text{ as } y.$$

This relation is an equivalence relation.

We will make use of this result, in due course.

Proof of Theorem 3.26. Let G be a group, and $A < G$. We have to show two things:

- (CP1) the cosets of A cover G , and
- (CP2) distinct cosets of A are disjoint.

We show (CP1) first. Let $g \in G$. The definition of a group tells us that $g = ge$. Since $e \in A$ by definition of subgroup, $g = ge \in gA$. Since g was arbitrary, every element of G is in some coset of A . Hence the union of all the cosets is G .

For (CP2), let X and Y be arbitrary cosets of A . Assume that X and Y are distinct; that is, $X \neq Y$. We need to show that they are disjoint; that is, $X \cap Y = \emptyset$. By way of contradiction, assume that $X \neq Y$ but $X \cap Y \neq \emptyset$. Since $X \neq Y$, one of the two cosets contains an element that does not appear in the other; without loss of generality, assume that $z \in X$ but $z \notin Y$. By definition, there exist $x, y \in G$ such that $X = xA$ and $Y = yA$; we can write $z = xa$ for some $a \in A$. Since $X \cap Y \neq \emptyset$, there exists some $w \in X \cap Y$; by definition, we can find $b, c \in A$ such that $w = xb = yc$. Solve this last equation for x , and we have $x = (yc)b^{-1}$. Substitute this into the equation for z , and we have

$$z = xa = [(yc)b^{-1}]a \underset{\text{ass.}}{=} y(cb^{-1}a).$$

Since A is a subgroup, hence a group, it is closed under inverses and multiplication, so $cb^{-1}a \in A$. But then $z = y(cb^{-1}a) \in yA$, which contradicts the choice of z ! The assumption that we could find distinct cosets that are not disjoint must have been false, and since X and Y were arbitrary, this holds for all cosets of A .

Having shown (CP2) and (CP1), we have shown that the cosets of A partition G . □

We conclude this section with three facts that allow us to decide when cosets are equal.

Lemma 3.28 (Equality of cosets). Let G be a group and $H < G$. All of the following hold:

(CE1) $eH = H$.

(CE2) For all $a \in G$, $a \in H$ iff $aH = H$.

(CE3) For all $a, b \in G$, $aH = bH$ if and only if $a^{-1}b \in H$.

As usual, you should keep in mind that in additive groups these conditions translate to

(CE1) $0 + H = H$.

(CE2) For all $a \in G$, if $a \in H$ then $a + H = H$.

(CE3) For all $a, b \in G$, $a + H = b + H$ if and only if $a - b \in H$.

Proof. We only sketch the proof here. You will fill in the details in Exercise 3.35. Remember that part of this problem involves proving that two sets are equal, and to prove that, you should prove that each is a subset of the other.

(CE1) is “obvious” (but fill in the details anyway).

We’ll skip (CE2) for the moment, and move to (CE3). Since (CE3) is also an equivalence, we have to prove two directions. Let $a, b \in G$. First, assume that $aH = bH$. By the identity property, $e \in H$, so $b = be \in bH$. Hence, $b \in aH$; that is, we can find $h \in H$ such that $b = ah$. By substitution and the properties of a group, $a^{-1}b = a^{-1}(ah) = h$, so $a^{-1}b \in H$.

Conversely, assume that $a^{-1}b \in H$. We must show that $aH = bH$, which requires us to show that $aH \subseteq bH$ and $aH \supseteq bH$. Since $a^{-1}b \in H$, we have

$$b = a(a^{-1}b) \in aH.$$

We can thus write $b = ah$ for some $h \in H$. Let $y \in bH$; then $y = b\hat{h}$ for some $\hat{h} \in H$, and we have $y = (ah)\hat{h} \in H$. Since y was arbitrary in bH , we now have $aH \supseteq bH$.

Although we could build a similar argument to show that $aH \subseteq bH$, instead we point out that $aH \supseteq bH$ implies that $aH \cap bH \neq \emptyset$. The cosets are not disjoint, so by Theorem 3.26, they are not distinct: $aH = bH$.

Now we turn to (CE2). Let $a \in G$, and assume $a \in H$. By the inverse property, $a^{-1} \in H$. We know that $e \in H$, so by closure, $a^{-1}e \in H$. We can now use (CE3) and (CE1) to determine that $aH = eH = H$. \square

Exercises.

Exercise 3.29. Show explicitly why left and right cosets are equal in abelian groups.

Exercise 3.30. In Exercise 3.12, you showed that $\Omega_2 < \Omega_8$. Compute the left and right cosets of Ω_2 in Ω_8 .

Exercise 3.31. Let $\{e, a, b, a + b\}$ be the Klein 4-group. (See Exercises 2.32 on page 52, 2.64 on page 69, and 3.13 on page 84.) Compute the cosets of $\langle a \rangle$.

Exercise 3.32. In Exercise 3.18 on page 84, you found another subgroup K of order 2 in D_3 . Does K satisfy the property $\alpha K = K\alpha$ for all $\alpha \in D_3$?

Exercise 3.33. Recall the subgroup L of \mathbb{R}^2 from Exercise 3.16 on page 84.

- (a) Give a geometric interpretation of the coset $(3, -1) + L$.
- (b) Give an algebraic expression that describes $p + L$, for arbitrary $p \in \mathbb{R}^2$.
- (c) Give a geometric interpretation of the cosets of L in \mathbb{R}^2 .
- (d) Use your geometric interpretation of the cosets of L in \mathbb{R}^2 to explain why the cosets of L partition \mathbb{R}^2 .

Exercise 3.34. Recall $D_n(\mathbb{R})$ from Exercise 3.15 on page 84. Give a description in set notation for

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + D_2(\mathbb{R}).$$

List some elements of the coset.

Exercise 3.35.

- (a) Fill in each blank of Figure 3.4 with the appropriate justification or statement.

3.3: Lagrange's Theorem

This section introduces an important result describing the number of cosets a subgroup can have. This leads to some properties regarding the order of a group and any of its elements.

Notation 3.36. Let G be a group, and $A < G$. We write G/A for the set of all left cosets of A . That is,

$$G/A = \{gA : g \in G\}.$$

Let G be a group and $H < G$.

Claim: $eH = H$.

1. First we show that _____. Let $x \in eH$.
 - (a) By definition, _____.
 - (b) By the identity property, _____.
 - (c) By definition, _____.
 - (d) We had chosen an arbitrary element of eH , so by inclusion, _____.
2. Now we show the converse. Let _____.
 - (a) By the identity property, _____.
 - (b) By definition, _____ $\in eH$.
 - (c) We had chosen an arbitrary element, so by inclusion, _____.

Figure 3.4. Material for Exercise 3.35

We also write $A \backslash G$ for the set of all right cosets of A :

$$A \backslash G = \{Ag : g \in G\}.$$

Example 3.37. Let $G = \mathbb{Z}$ and $A = 4\mathbb{Z}$. We saw in Example 1.37 that

$$G/A = \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z} = \{A, 1+A, 2+A, 3+A\}.$$

We actually “waved our hands” in Example 1.37. That means that we did not provide a very detailed argument, so let's show the details here. Recall that $4\mathbb{Z}$ is the set of multiples of 4, so $x \in A$ iff x is a multiple of 4. What about the remaining elements of \mathbb{Z} ?

Let $x \in \mathbb{Z}$; then

$$x + A = \{x + z : z \in A\} = \{x + 4n : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

Use the Division Theorem to write

$$x = 4q + r$$

for unique $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$, where $0 \leq r < 4$. Then

$$x + A = \{(4q + r) + 4n : n \in \mathbb{Z}\} = \{r + 4(q + n) : n \in \mathbb{Z}\}.$$

By closure, $q + n \in \mathbb{Z}$. If we write m in place of $4(q + n)$, then $m \in 4\mathbb{Z}$. So

$$x + A = \{r + m : m \in 4\mathbb{Z}\} = r + 4\mathbb{Z}.$$

The distinct cosets of A are thus determined by the distinct remainders from division by 4. Since the remainders from division by 4 are 0, 1, 2, and 3, we conclude that

$$\mathbb{Z}/A = \{A, 1+A, 2+A, 3+A\}$$

as claimed above.

Example 3.38. Let $G = D_3$ and $K = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\}$ as in Example 3.25, then

$$G/K = D_3 / \langle \rho \rangle = \{K, \varphi K\}.$$

Example 3.39. Let $H < \mathbb{R}^2$ be as in Example 3.8 on page 81; that is,

$$H = \{(a, 0) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : a \in \mathbb{R}\}.$$

Then

$$\mathbb{R}^2 / H = \{r + H : r \in \mathbb{R}^2\}.$$

It is not possible to list all the elements of G/H , but some examples would be

$$(1, 1) + H, (4, -2) + H.$$

Here's a question for you to think about. Speaking *geometrically*, what do the elements of G/H look like? This question is similar to Exercise 3.33.

It is important to keep in mind that G/A is a set whose elements are also sets. As a result, showing equality of two elements of G/A requires one to show that two sets are equal.

When G is finite, a simple formula gives us the size of G/A .

Theorem 3.40 (Lagrange's Theorem). Let G be a group of finite order, and $A < G$. Then

$$|G/A| = \frac{|G|}{|A|}.$$

Lagrange's Theorem states that the number of elements in G/A is the same as the quotient of the order of G by the order of A . The notation of cosets is somewhat suggestive of the relationship we illustrated at the beginning of Section 3.2 between cosets and division of the integers. Nevertheless, Lagrange's Theorem is *not* as obvious as the notation might imply: we can't "divide" the sets G and A . We are not moving the absolute value bars "inside" the fraction; nor can we, as G/A is not a number. Rather, we are dividing, or partitioning, if you will, the group G by the cosets of its subgroup A , obtaining the set of cosets G/A .

Proof. From Theorem 3.26 we know that the cosets of A partition G . How many such cosets are there? $|G/A|$, by definition! Each coset has the same size, $|A|$. A basic principle of counting tells us that the number of elements of G is thus the product of the number of elements in each coset and the number of cosets. That is, $|G/A| \cdot |A| = |G|$. This implies the theorem. \square

The next-to-last sentence of the proof contains the statement $|G/A| \cdot |A| = |G|$. Since $|A|$ is the order of the group A , and $|G/A|$ is an integer, we conclude that:

Corollary 3.41. The order of a subgroup divides the order of a group.

Example 3.42. Let G be the Klein 4-group (see Exercises 2.32 on page 52, 2.64 on page 69, and 3.13 on page 84). Every subgroup of the Klein 4-group has order 1, 2, or 4. As predicted by Corollary 3.41, the orders of the subgroups divide the order of the group.

Claim: The order of an element of a group divides the order of a group.

Proof:

1. Let G _____.
 2. Let x _____.
 3. Let $H = \langle \text{_____} \rangle$.
 4. By _____, every integer power of x is in G .
 5. By _____, H is the set of integer powers of x .
 6. By _____, $H < G$.
 7. By _____, $|H|$ divides $|G|$.
 8. By _____, $\text{ord}(x)$ divides $|H|$.
 9. By definition, there exist $m, n \in \text{_____}$ such that $|H| = m \text{ord}(x)$ and $|G| = n |H|$.
 10. By substitution, $|G| = \text{_____}$.
 11. _____.
- (This last statement must include a justification.)
-

Figure 3.5. Material for Exercise 3.45

Likewise, the order of $\{\iota, \varphi\}$ divides the order of D_3 .

By contrast, the subset HK of D_3 that you computed in Exercise 3.18 on page 84 has four elements. Since $4 \nmid 6$, the contrapositive of Lagrange's Theorem implies that HK *cannot* be a subgroup of D_3 .

From the fact that every element g generates a cyclic subgroup $\langle g \rangle < G$, Lagrange's Theorem also implies an important consequence about the order of any element of any finite group.

Corollary 3.43. In a finite group G , the order of any element divides the order of a group.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 3.45. □

Exercises.

Exercise 3.44. Recall from Exercise 3.12 that if $d \mid n$, then $\Omega_d < \Omega_n$. How many cosets of Ω_d are there in Ω_n ?

Exercise 3.45. Fill in each blank of Figure 3.5 with the appropriate justification or expression.

Exercise 3.46. Suppose that a group G has order 8, but is not cyclic. Show that $g^4 = e$ for all $g \in G$.

Exercise 3.47. Suppose that a group has five elements. Why *must* it be abelian?

Exercise 3.48. Find a sufficient (but not necessary) condition on the order of a group of order at least two that guarantees that the group is cyclic.

3.4: Quotient Groups

Let $A < G$. Is there a natural generalization of the operation of G that makes G/A a group? By a “natural” generalization, we mean something like

$$(gA)(hA) = (gh)A.$$

“Normal” subgroups

The first order of business is to make sure that the operation even makes sense. The technical word for this is that the operation is **well-defined**. *What does that mean?* A coset can have different representations. An operation must be a function: for every pair of elements, it must produce *exactly one* result. The relation above would not be an operation if different representations of a coset gave us different answers. Example 3.49 shows how it can go wrong.

Example 3.49. Recall $H = \langle \varphi \rangle < D_3$ from Example 3.23. Let $X = \rho H$ and $Y = \rho^2 H$. Notice that $(\rho\varphi)H = \{\rho\varphi, \iota\} = \rho H$, so X has two representations, ρH and $(\rho\varphi)H$.

Were the operation well-defined, XY would have the same value, *regardless of the representation of X* . That is not the case! When we use the the first representation,

$$XY = (\rho H)(\rho^2 H) = (\rho \circ \rho^2)H = \rho^3 H = \iota H = H.$$

When we use the second representation,

$$\begin{aligned} XY &= ((\rho\varphi)H)(\rho^2 H) = ((\rho\varphi)\rho^2)H = (\rho(\varphi\rho^2))H \\ &= (\rho(\rho\varphi))H = (\rho^2\varphi)H \neq H. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, sometimes the operation *is* well-defined.

Example 3.50. Recall the subgroup $A = 4\mathbb{Z}$ of \mathbb{Z} . Let $B, C, D \in \mathbb{Z}/A$, so $B = b + 4\mathbb{Z}$, $C = c + 4\mathbb{Z}$, and $D = d + 4\mathbb{Z}$ for some $b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$.

We have to make sure that we cannot have $B = D$ and $B + C \neq D + C$. For example, if $B = 1 + 4\mathbb{Z}$ and $D = 5 + 4\mathbb{Z}$, $B = D$. Does it follow that $B + C = D + C$?

From Lemma 3.28, we know that $B = D$ iff $b - d \in A = 4\mathbb{Z}$. That is, $b - d = 4m$ for some $m \in \mathbb{Z}$. Let $x \in B + C$; then $x = (b + c) + 4n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. By substitution,

$$x = ((d + 4m) + c) + 4n = (d + c) + 4(m + n) \in D + C.$$

Since x was arbitrary in $B + C$, we have $B + C \subseteq D + C$. A similar argument shows that $B + C \supseteq D + C$, so the two are, in fact, equal.

The operation was well-defined in the second example, but not the first. What made for the difference? In the second example, we rewrote

$$((d + 4m) + c) + 4n = (d + c) + 4(m + n),$$

but that relies on the fact that *addition commutes in an abelian group*. Without that fact, we could not have swapped c and $4m$.

Does that mean we cannot make a group out of cosets of nonabelian groups? Not quite. The key in Example 3.50 was not that \mathbb{Z} is abelian, but that we could rewrite $(4m + c) + 4n$ as

$c + (4m + 4n)$, then simplify $4m + 4n$ to $4(m + n)$. The abelian property makes it easy to do that, but we don't need the *group* G to be abelian; we need the *subgroup* A to satisfy it. If A were not abelian, we could still make it work if, after we move c left, we get *some* element of A to its right, so that it can be combined with the other one. That is, we have to be able to rewrite any ac as ca' , where a' is also in A . We *need not have* $a = a'$! Let's emphasize that, changing c to g for an arbitrary group G :

The operation defined above is well-defined
iff
for every $g \in G$ and for every $a \in A$
there exists $a' \in A$ such that $ga = a'g$.

Think about this in terms of sets: for every $g \in G$ and for *every* $a \in A$, there exists $a' \in A$ such that $ga = a'g$. Here $ga \in gA$ is arbitrary, so $gA \subseteq Ag$. The other direction must also be true, so $gA \supseteq Ag$. In other words,

The operation defined above is well-defined
iff $gA = Ag$ for all $g \in G$.

This property merits a definition.

Definition 3.51. Let $A < G$. If

$$gA = Ag$$

for every $g \in G$, then A is a **normal subgroup** of G .

Notation 3.52. We write $A \triangleleft G$ to indicate that A is a normal subgroup of G .

Although we have outlined the argument above, we should show explicitly that if A is a normal subgroup, then the operation proposed for G/A is indeed well-defined.

Lemma 3.53. Let $A < G$. Then (CO1) implies (CO2).

(CO1) $A \triangleleft G$.

(CO2) Let $X, Y \in G/A$ and $x, y \in G$ such that $X = xA$ and $Y = yA$.
The operation \cdot on G/A defined by

$$XY = (xy)A$$

is well-defined for all $x, y \in G$.

Proof. Let $W, X, Y, Z \in G/A$ and choose $w, x, y, z \in G$ such that $W = wA$, $X = xA$, $Y = yA$, and $Z = zA$. To show that the operation is well-defined, we must show that if $W = X$ and $Y = Z$, then $WY = XZ$ regardless of the values of w, x, y , or z . Assume therefore that $W = X$ and $Y = Z$. By substitution, $wA = xA$ and $yA = zA$. By Lemma 3.28(CE3), $w^{-1}x \in A$ and $y^{-1}z \in A$.

Since WY and XZ are sets, showing that they are equal requires us to show that each is a subset of the other. First we show that $WY \subseteq XZ$. To do this, let $t \in WY = (wy)A$. By definition of a coset, $t = (wy)a$ for some $a \in A$. What we will do now is rewrite t by

- using the fact that A is normal to move some element of a left, then right, through the representation of t ; and

- using the fact that $W = X$ and $Y = Z$ to rewrite products of the form $w\check{\alpha}$ as $x\hat{\alpha}$ and $y\dot{\alpha}$ as $z\ddot{\alpha}$, where $\check{\alpha}, \hat{\alpha}, \dot{\alpha}, \ddot{\alpha} \in A$.

How, precisely? By the associative property, $t = w(ya)$. By definition of a coset, $ya \in yA$. By hypothesis, A is normal, so $yA = Ay$; thus, $ya \in Ay$. By definition of a coset, there exists $\check{a} \in A$ such that $ya = \check{a}y$. By substitution, $t = w(\check{a}y)$. By the associative property, $t = (w\check{a})y$. By definition of a coset, $w\check{a} \in wA$. By hypothesis, A is normal, so $wA = Aw$. Thus $w\check{a} \in Aw$. By hypothesis, $W = X$; that is, $wA = xA$. Thus $w\check{a} \in xA$, and by definition of a coset, $w\check{a} = x\hat{a}$ for some $\hat{a} \in A$. By substitution, $t = (x\hat{a})y$. The associative property again gives us $t = x(\hat{a}y)$; since A is normal we can write $\hat{a}y = y\dot{a}$ for some $\dot{a} \in A$. Hence $t = x(y\dot{a})$. Now,

$$y\dot{a} \in yA = Y = Z = zA,$$

so we can write $y\dot{a} = z\ddot{a}$ for some $\ddot{a} \in A$. By substitution and the definition of coset arithmetic,

$$t = x(z\ddot{a}) = (xz)\ddot{a} \in (xz)A = (xA)(zA) = XZ.$$

Since t was arbitrary in WY , we have shown that $WY \subseteq XZ$. A similar argument shows that $WY \supseteq XZ$; thus $WY = XZ$ and the operation is well-defined. \square

An easy generalization of the argument of Example 3.50 shows the following Theorem.

Theorem 3.54. Let G be an abelian group, and $H < G$. Then $H \triangleleft G$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 3.63. \square

We said before that we don't need an abelian group to have a normal subgroup. Here's a *great* example.

Example 3.55. Let

$$A_3 = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\} < D_3.$$

We call A_3 the **alternating group** on three elements. We claim that $A_3 \triangleleft D_3$. Indeed,

σ	σA_3	$A_3 \sigma$
ι	A_3	A_3
ρ	A_3	A_3
ρ^2	A_3	A_3
φ	$\varphi A_3 = \{\varphi, \varphi\rho, \varphi\rho^2\}$ $= \{\varphi, \rho^2\varphi, \rho\varphi\} = A_3\varphi$	$A_3\varphi = \varphi A_3$
$\rho\varphi$	$\{\rho\varphi, (\rho\varphi)\rho, (\rho\varphi)\rho^2\}$ $= \{\rho\varphi, \varphi, \rho^2\varphi\} = \varphi A_3$	φA_3
$\rho^2\varphi$	$\{\rho^2\varphi, (\rho^2\varphi)\rho, (\rho^2\varphi)\rho^2\}$ $= \{\rho^2\varphi, \rho\varphi, \varphi\} = \varphi A_3$	φA_3

We have left out some details, though we also computed this table in Example 3.25, where we called the subgroup K instead of A_3 . You should check the computation carefully, using extensively the fact that $\varphi\rho = \rho^2\varphi$.

The set of cosets of a normal subgroup is, as desired, a group.

Theorem 3.56. Let G be a group. If $A \triangleleft G$, then G/A is a group.

Proof. Assume $A \triangleleft G$. By Lemma 3.53, the operation is well-defined, so it remains to show that G/A satisfies the properties of a group.

(closure) Closure follows from the fact that multiplication of cosets is well-defined when $A \triangleleft G$, as shown in Lemma 3.53: Let $X, Y \in G/A$, and choose $g_1, g_2 \in G$ such that $X = g_1A$ and $Y = g_2A$. By definition of coset multiplication, $XY = (g_1A)(g_2A) = (g_1g_2)A \in G/A$. Since X, Y were arbitrary in G/A , coset multiplication is closed.

(associativity) The associative property of G/A follows from the associative property of G . Let $X, Y, Z \in G/A$; choose $g_1, g_2, g_3 \in G$ such that $X = g_1A$, $Y = g_2A$, and $Z = g_3A$. Then

$$(XY)Z = [(g_1A)(g_2A)](g_3A).$$

By definition of coset multiplication,

$$(XY)Z = ((g_1g_2)A)(g_3A).$$

By the definition of coset multiplication,

$$(XY)Z = ((g_1g_2)g_3)A.$$

(Note the parentheses grouping g_1g_2 .) Now apply the associative property of G and reverse the previous steps to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (XY)Z &= (g_1(g_2g_3))A \\ &= (g_1A)((g_2g_3)A) \\ &= (g_1A)[(g_2A)(g_3A)] \\ &= X(YZ). \end{aligned}$$

Since $(XY)Z = X(YZ)$ and X, Y, Z were arbitrary in G/A , coset multiplication is associative.

(identity) We claim that the identity of G/A is A itself. Let $X \in G/A$, and choose $g \in G$ such that $X = gA$. Since $e \in A$, Lemma 3.28 on page 88 implies that $A = eA$, so

$$XA = (gA)(eA) = (ge)A = gA = X.$$

Since X was arbitrary in G/A and $XA = X$, A is the identity of G/A .

(inverse) Let $X \in G/A$. Choose $g \in G$ such that $X = gA$, and let $Y = g^{-1}A$. We claim that $Y = X^{-1}$. By applying substitution and the operation on cosets,

$$XY = (gA)(g^{-1}A) = (gg^{-1})A = eA = A.$$

Hence X has an inverse in G/A . Since X was arbitrary in G/A , every element of G/A has an inverse.

We have shown that G/A satisfies the properties of a group. \square

Definition 3.57. Let G be a group, and $A \triangleleft G$. Then G/A is the **quotient group of G with respect to A** , also called **$G \bmod A$** .

Normally we simply say “the quotient group” rather than “the quotient group of G with respect to A .”

Example 3.58. Since A_3 is a normal subgroup of D_3 , D_3/A_3 is a group. By Lagrange’s Theorem, it has $6/3 = 2$ elements. The composition table is

\circ	A_3	φA_3
A_3	A_3	φA_3
φA_3	φA_3	A_3

We meet an important quotient group in Section 3.5.

Exercises.

Exercise 3.59. Show that for any group G , $\{e\} \triangleleft G$ and $G \triangleleft G$.

Exercise 3.60. Recall from Exercise 3.12 that if $d \mid n$, then $\Omega_d < \Omega_n$.

- Explain how we know that, in fact, $\Omega_d \triangleleft \Omega_n$.
- Compute the Cayley table of the quotient group Ω_8/Ω_2 . Does it have the same structure as the Klein 4-group, or as the Cyclic group of order 4?

Exercise 3.61. Let $H = \langle i \rangle < Q_8$.

- Show that $H \triangleleft Q_8$ by computing all the cosets of H .
- Compute the multiplication table of Q_8/H .

Exercise 3.62. Let $H = \langle -1 \rangle < Q_8$.

- Show that $H \triangleleft Q_8$ by computing all the cosets of H .
- Compute the multiplication table of Q_8/H .
- With which well-known group does Q_8/H have the same structure?

Exercise 3.63. Let G be an abelian group. Explain why for any $H < G$ we know that $H \triangleleft G$.

Definition 3.64. Let G be a group, $g \in G$, and $H < G$. Define the **conjugation** of H by g as

$$gHg^{-1} = \{h^g : h \in H\}.$$

(The notation h^g is the definition of conjugation from Exercise 2.37 on page 53; that is, $h^g = ghg^{-1}$.)

Let G be a group, and $H < G$.

Claim: $H \triangleleft G$ if and only if $H = gHg^{-1}$ for all $g \in G$.

Proof:

1. First, we show that if $H \triangleleft G$, then _____.
 - (a) Assume _____.
 - (b) By definition of normal, _____.
 - (c) Let g _____.
 - (d) We first show that $H \subseteq gHg^{-1}$.
 - i. Let h _____.
 - ii. By 1b, $hg \in$ _____.
 - iii. By definition, there exists $h' \in H$ such that $hg =$ _____.
 - iv. Multiply both sides on the right by g^{-1} to see that $h =$ _____.
 - v. By _____, $h \in gHg^{-1}$.
 - vi. Since h was arbitrary, _____.
 - (e) Now we show that $H \supseteq gHg^{-1}$.
 - i. Let $x \in$ _____.
 - ii. By _____, $x = ghg^{-1}$ for some $h \in H$.
 - iii. By _____, $gh \in Hg$.
 - iv. By _____, there exists $h' \in H$ such that $gh = h'g$.
 - v. By _____, $x = (h'g)g^{-1}$.
 - vi. By _____, $x = h'$.
 - vii. By _____, $x \in H$.
 - viii. Since x was arbitrary, _____.
 - (f) We have shown that $H \subseteq gHg^{-1}$ and $H \supseteq gHg^{-1}$. Thus, _____.
2. Now, we show _____: that is, if $H = gHg^{-1}$ for all $g \in G$, then $H \triangleleft G$.
 - (a) Assume _____.
 - (b) First, we show that $gH \subseteq Hg$.
 - i. Let $x \in$ _____.
 - ii. By _____, there exists $h \in H$ such that $x = gh$.
 - iii. By _____, $g^{-1}x = h$.
 - iv. By _____, there exists $h' \in H$ such that $h = g^{-1}h'g$.
(A key point here is that this is true for *all* $g \in G$.)
 - v. By _____, $g^{-1}x = g^{-1}h'g$.
 - vi. By _____, $x = g(g^{-1}h'g)$.
 - vii. By _____, $x = h'g$.
 - viii. By _____, $x \in Hg$.
 - ix. Since x was arbitrary, _____.
 - (c) The proof that _____ is similar.
 - (d) We have show that _____. Thus, $gH = Hg$.

Figure 3.6. Material for Exercise 3.65

Exercise 3.65. Fill in each blank of Figure 3.6 with the appropriate justification or statement.¹³

¹³Certain texts define a normal subgroup this way; that is, a subgroup H is normal if every conjugate of H is precisely H . They then prove that in this case, any left coset equals the corresponding right coset.

Let G be a group. The **centralizer** of G is

$$Z(G) = \{g \in G : xg = gx \forall x \in G\}.$$

Claim: $Z(G) \triangleleft G$.

Proof:

1. First, we must show that $Z(G) < G$.
 - (a) Let g, h, x ____.
 - (b) By ____, $xg = gx$ and $xh = hx$.
 - (c) By ____, $xh^{-1} = h^{-1}x$.
 - (d) By ____, $h^{-1} \in Z(G)$.
 - (e) By the associative property and the definition of $Z(G)$,
 $(gh^{-1})x = \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \underline{\hspace{1cm}} = \dots = x(gh^{-1})$.
 (Fill in more blanks as needed.)
 - (f) By ____, $gh^{-1} \in Z(G)$.
 - (g) By ____, $Z(G) < G$.
2. Now, we show that $Z(G)$ is normal.
 - (a) Let x ____.
 - (b) First we show that $xZ(G) \subseteq Z(G)x$.
 - i. Let y ____.
 - ii. By definition of cosets, there exists $g \in Z(G)$ such that $y =$ ____.
 - iii. By definition of $z(G)$, ____.
 - iv. By definition of ____, $y \in Z(G)x$.
 - v. By ____, $xZ(G) \subseteq Z(G)x$.
 - (c) A similar argument shows that ____.
 - (d) By definition, _____. That is, $Z(G)$ is normal.

Figure 3.7. Material for Exercise 3.69

Exercise 3.66. Recall the subgroup L of \mathbb{R}^2 from Exercises 3.16 on page 84 and 3.33 on page 89.

- (a) Explain how we know that $L \triangleleft \mathbb{R}^2$ *without* checking that $p + L = L + p$ for any $p \in \mathbb{R}^2$.
- (b) Sketch two elements of \mathbb{R}^2/L and show their sum.

Exercise 3.67. Explain why every subgroup of $D_m(\mathbb{R})$ is normal.

Exercise 3.68. Show that Q_8 is not a normal subgroup of $GL_m(\mathbb{C})$.

Exercise 3.69. Fill in every blank of Figure 3.7 with the appropriate justification or statement.

Exercise 3.70. Let G be a group, and $H < G$. Define the **normalizer** of H as

$$N_G(H) = \{g \in G : gH = Hg\}.$$

Show that $H \triangleleft N_G(H)$.

Exercise 3.71. Let G be a group, and $A < G$. Suppose that $|G/A| = 2$; that is, the subgroup A partitions G into precisely two left cosets. Show that:

- $A \triangleleft G$; and
- G/A is abelian.

Exercise 3.72. Recall from Exercise 2.37 on page 53 the commutator of two elements of a group. Let $[G, G]$ denote the intersection of all subgroups of G that contain $[x, y]$ for all $x, y \in G$.

- Compute $[D_3, D_3]$.
- Compute $[Q_8, Q_8]$.
- Show that $[G, G] < G$.
- Fill in each blank of Figure 3.8 with the appropriate justification or statement.

Definition 3.73. We call $[G, G]$ the **commutator subgroup** of G , and make use of it in Section 3.6.

Claim: For any group G , $[G, G]$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Proof:

- Let _____.
- We will use Exercise 3.65 to show that $[G, G]$ is normal. Let $g \in$ _____.
- First we show that $[G, G] \subseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$. Let $h \in [G, G]$.
 - We need to show that $h \in g [G, G] g^{-1}$. It will suffice to show that this is true if h has the simpler form $h = [x, y]$, since _____. Thus, choose $x, y \in G$ such that $h = [x, y]$.
 - By _____, $h = x^{-1}y^{-1}xy$.
 - By _____, $h = ex^{-1}ey^{-1}exye$.
 - By _____, $h = (gg^{-1})x^{-1}(gg^{-1})y^{-1}(gg^{-1})x(gg^{-1})y(gg^{-1})$.
 - By _____, $h = g(g^{-1}x^{-1}g)(g^{-1}y^{-1}g)(g^{-1}xg)(g^{-1}yg)g^{-1}$.
 - By _____, $h = g(x^{-1})^{g^{-1}}(y^{-1})^{g^{-1}}(x^{g^{-1}})(y^{g^{-1}})g^{-1}$.
 - By Exercise 2.37 on page 53(c), $h =$ _____.
 - By definition of the commutator, $h =$ _____.
 - By _____, $h \in g [G, G] g^{-1}$.
 - Since _____, $[G, G] \subseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$.
- Conversely, we show that $[G, G] \supseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$. Let $h \in g [G, G] g^{-1}$.
 - We need to show that $h \in [G, G]$. It will suffice to show this is true if h has the simpler form $h = g [x, y] g^{-1}$, since _____. Thus, choose $x, y \in G$ such that $h = g [x, y] g^{-1}$.
 - By _____, $h = [x, y]^g$.
 - By _____, $h = [x^g, y^g]$.
 - By _____, $h \in [G, G]$.
 - Since _____, $[G, G] \supseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$.
- We have shown that $[G, G] \subseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$ and $[G, G] \supseteq g [G, G] g^{-1}$. By _____, $[G, G] = g [G, G] g^{-1}$.

Figure 3.8. Material for Exercise 3.72

3.5: “Clockwork” groups

By Theorem 3.54, every subgroup H of \mathbb{Z} is normal. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$; since $n\mathbb{Z} < \mathbb{Z}$, it follows that $n\mathbb{Z} \triangleleft \mathbb{Z}$. Thus $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ is a quotient group.

We used $n\mathbb{Z}$ in many examples of subgroups. One reason is that you are accustomed to working with \mathbb{Z} , so it should be conceptually easy. Another reason is that the quotient group $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$ has a vast array of applications in number theory and computer science. You will see some of these in Chapter 6. Because this group is so important, we give it several special names.

Definition 3.74. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. We call the quotient group $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$

- $\mathbb{Z} \bmod n$, or
- the **linear residues modulo n** .

Notation 3.75. It is common to write \mathbb{Z}_n instead of $\mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$.

Example 3.76. You already saw a bit of $\mathbb{Z}_4 = \mathbb{Z}/4\mathbb{Z}$ at the beginning of Section 3.2 and again in Example 3.50. Recall that $\mathbb{Z}_4 = \{4\mathbb{Z}, 1+4\mathbb{Z}, 2+4\mathbb{Z}, 3+4\mathbb{Z}\}$. Addition in this group will always give us one of those four representations of the cosets:

$$\begin{aligned}(2+4\mathbb{Z}) + (1+4\mathbb{Z}) &= 3+4\mathbb{Z}; \\ (1+4\mathbb{Z}) + (3+4\mathbb{Z}) &= 4+4\mathbb{Z} = 4\mathbb{Z}; \\ (2+4\mathbb{Z}) + (3+4\mathbb{Z}) &= 5+4\mathbb{Z} = 1+4\mathbb{Z};\end{aligned}$$

and so forth.

Reasoning similar to that used at the beginning of Section 3.2 would show that

$$\mathbb{Z}_{31} = \mathbb{Z}/31\mathbb{Z} = \{31\mathbb{Z}, 1+31\mathbb{Z}, \dots, 30+31\mathbb{Z}\}.$$

We show this explicitly in Theorem 3.80.

Before looking at some properties of \mathbb{Z}_n , let’s look for an easier way to talk about its elements. It is burdensome to write $a + n\mathbb{Z}$ whenever we want to discuss an element of \mathbb{Z}_n , so we adopt the following convention.

Notation 3.77. Let $A \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ and choose $r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $A = r + n\mathbb{Z}$.

- If it is clear from context that A is an element of \mathbb{Z}_n , then we simply write r instead of $r + n\mathbb{Z}$.
- If we want to emphasize that A is an element of \mathbb{Z}_n (perhaps there are a lot of integers hanging about) then we write $[r]_n$ instead of $r + n\mathbb{Z}$.
- If the value of n is obvious from context, we simply write $[r]$.

To help you grow accustomed to the notation $[r]_n$, we use it for the rest of this chapter, even when n is mind-bogglingly obvious.

The first property is that, for most values of n , \mathbb{Z}_n has finitely many elements. To show that there are finitely many elements of \mathbb{Z}_n , we rely on the following fact, which is important enough to highlight as a separate result.

Lemma 3.78. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ and $[a]_n \in \mathbb{Z}_n$. Use the Division Theorem to choose $q, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a = qn + r$ and $0 \leq r < |n|$. Then $[a]_n = [r]_n$.

The proof of Lemma 3.78 on the preceding page is similar to the discussion in Example 3.37 on page 90, so you might want to reread that.

Proof. We give two different proofs. Both are based on the fact that $[a]_n$ and $[r]_n$ are *cosets*; so showing that they are equal is tantamount to showing that a and r are different elements of the same set.

(1) By definition and substitution,

$$\begin{aligned}
 [a]_n &= a + n\mathbb{Z} \\
 &= (qn + r) + n\mathbb{Z} \\
 &= \{(qn + r) + nd : d \in \mathbb{Z}\} \\
 &= \{r + n(q + d) : d \in \mathbb{Z}\} \\
 &= \{r + nm : m \in \mathbb{Z}\} \\
 &= r + n\mathbb{Z} \\
 &= [r]_n.
 \end{aligned}$$

(2) Rewrite $a = qn + r$ as $a - r = qn$. By definition, $a - r \in n\mathbb{Z}$. The immensely useful Lemma 3.28 shows that $a + n\mathbb{Z} = r + n\mathbb{Z}$, and the notation implies that $[a]_n = [r]_n$. \square

Definition 3.79. On account of Lemma 3.78, we can designate the remainder of division of a by n , whose value is between 0 and $|n| - 1$, inclusive, as the **canonical representation** of $[a]_n$ in \mathbb{Z}_n .

Theorem 3.80. \mathbb{Z}_n is finite for every nonzero $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. In fact, if $n \neq 0$ then \mathbb{Z}_n has $|n|$ elements corresponding to the remainders from division by n : 0, 1, 2, ..., $n - 1$.

Proof. Lemma 3.78 on the preceding page states that every element of such \mathbb{Z}_n can be represented by $[r]_n$ for some $r \in \mathbb{Z}$ where $0 \leq r < |n|$. But there are only $|n|$ possible choices for such a remainder. \square

Let’s look at how we can perform arithmetic in \mathbb{Z}_n .

Lemma 3.81. Let $d, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $[a]_n, [b]_n \in \mathbb{Z}_n$. Then

$$[a]_n + [b]_n = [a + b]_n$$

and

$$d[a]_n = [da]_n.$$

For example, $[3]_7 + [9]_7 = [3 + 9]_7 = [12]_7 = [5]_7$ and $-4[3]_5 = [-4 \cdot 3]_5 = [-12]_5 = [3]_5$.

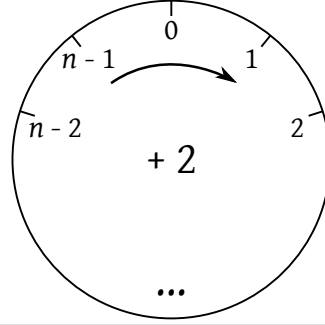


Figure 3.9. Addition in \mathbb{Z}_n is “clockwork”: $[n-1]_n + [2]_n = [1]_n$.

Proof. The proof really amounts to little more than manipulating the notation. By the definitions of coset addition and of \mathbb{Z}_n ,

$$\begin{aligned} [a]_n + [b]_n &= (a + n\mathbb{Z}) + (b + n\mathbb{Z}) \\ &= (a + b) + n\mathbb{Z} \\ &= [a + b]_n. \end{aligned}$$

For $d[a]_n$, we consider three cases.

If $d = 0$, then $d[a]_n = [0]_n$ by Notation 2.51 on page 63, and $[0]_n = [0 \cdot a]_n = [da]_n$. By substitution, then, $d[a]_n = [da]_n$.

If d is positive, then the expression $d[a]_n$ is the sum of d copies of $[a]_n$, which the Lemma’s first claim (now proved) implies to be

$$\begin{aligned} \underbrace{[a]_n + [a]_n + \cdots + [a]_n}_{d \text{ times}} &= [2a]_n + \underbrace{[a]_n + \cdots + [a]_n}_{d-2 \text{ times}} \\ &\vdots \\ &= [da]_n. \end{aligned}$$

If d is negative, then Notation 2.51 again tells us that $d[a]_n$ is the sum of $|d|$ copies of $-[a]_n$. So, what is the additive inverse of $[a]_n$? Using the first claim, $[a]_n + [-a]_n = [a + (-a)]_n = [0]_n$, so $-[a]_n = [-a]_n$. By substitution,

$$\begin{aligned} d[a]_n &= |d|(-[a]_n) = |d|[-a]_n \\ &= [|d| \cdot (-a)]_n = [-d \cdot (-a)]_n = [da]_n. \end{aligned}$$

□

Lemmas 3.78 and 3.81 imply that each \mathbb{Z}_n acts as a “clockwork” group. Why?

- To add $[a]_n$ and $[b]_n$, let $c = a + b$.
- If $0 \leq c < |n|$, then you are done. After all, division of c by n gives $q = 0$ and $r = c$.
- Otherwise, $c < 0$ or $c \geq |n|$, so we divide c by n , obtaining q and r where $0 \leq r < |n|$. The sum is $[r]_n$.

We call this “clockwork” because it counts like a clock: if you sit down at 5 o’clock and wait two hours, you rise at not at 13 o’clock, but at $13 - 12 = 1$ o’clock. See Figure 3.9.

It should be clear from Example 2.9 on page 47 as well as Exercise 2.31 on page 52 that \mathbb{Z}_2 and \mathbb{Z}_3 have precisely the same structure as the groups of order 2 and 3. On the other hand, we saw in Exercise 2.32 on page 52 that there are two possible structures for a group of order 4: the Klein 4-group, and a cyclic group. Which structure does \mathbb{Z}_4 have?

Example 3.82. Use Lemma 3.81 to observe that

$$\langle [1]_4 \rangle = \{[0]_4, [1]_4, [2]_4, [3]_4\}$$

since $[2]_4 = [1]_4 + [1]_4$, $[3]_4 = [2]_4 + [1]_4$, and $[0]_4 = 0 \cdot [1]_4$ (or $[0]_4 = [3]_4 + [1]_4$).

The fact that \mathbb{Z}_4 was cyclic makes one wonder: is \mathbb{Z}_n always cyclic? Yes!

Theorem 3.83. \mathbb{Z}_n is cyclic for every $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

This theorem has a more general version, which you will prove in the homework.

Proof. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $[a]_n \in \mathbb{Z}_n$. By Lemma 3.81,

$$[a]_n = [a \cdot 1]_n = a [1]_n \in \langle [1]_n \rangle.$$

Since $[a]_n$ was arbitrary in \mathbb{Z}_n , $\mathbb{Z}_n \subseteq \langle [1]_n \rangle$. Closure implies that $\mathbb{Z}_n \supseteq \langle [1]_n \rangle$, so in fact $\mathbb{Z}_n = \langle [1]_n \rangle$, and \mathbb{Z}_n is therefore cyclic. \square

Not *every* non-zero element necessarily generates \mathbb{Z}_n . We know that $[2]_4 + [2]_4 = [4]_4 = [0]_4$, so in \mathbb{Z}_4 , we have

$$\langle [2]_4 \rangle = \{[0]_4, [2]_4\} \subsetneq \mathbb{Z}_4.$$

A natural and interesting followup question is, which non-zero elements *do* generate \mathbb{Z}_n ? You need a bit more background in number theory before you can answer that question, but in the exercises you will build some more addition tables and use them to formulate a hypothesis.

The following important lemma gives an “easy” test for whether two integers are in the same coset of \mathbb{Z}_n .

Lemma 3.84. Let $a, b, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and assume that $n \neq 0$. The following are equivalent.

- (A) $a + n\mathbb{Z} = b + n\mathbb{Z}$.
- (B) $[a]_n = [b]_n$.
- (C) $n \mid (a - b)$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 3.91. \square

Exercises.

Exercise 3.85. We showed that \mathbb{Z}_n is finite for $n \neq 0$. What if $n = 0$? How many elements would it have? Illustrate a few additions and subtractions, and indicate whether you think that \mathbb{Z}_0 is an interesting or useful group.

Exercise 3.86. In the future, we won’t actually talk about \mathbb{Z}_n for $n < 0$. Show that this is because $\mathbb{Z}_n = \mathbb{Z}_{|n|}$.

Exercise 3.87. Write out the Cayley tables for \mathbb{Z}_2 and \mathbb{Z}_3 . Remember that the operation is addition.

Exercise 3.88. Write down the Cayley table for \mathbb{Z}_5 . Remember that the operation is addition. Which elements generate \mathbb{Z}_5 ?

Exercise 3.89. Write down the Cayley table for \mathbb{Z}_6 . Remember that the operation is addition. Which elements generate \mathbb{Z}_6 ?

Exercise 3.90. Compare the results of Example 3.82 and Exercises 3.87, 3.88, and 3.89. Formulate a conjecture as to which elements generate \mathbb{Z}_n . Do not try to prove your example.

Exercise 3.91. Prove Lemma 3.84.

Exercise 3.92. Prove the following generalization of Theorem 3.83: If G is a cyclic group and $A \triangleleft G$, then G/A is cyclic.

3.6: “Solvable” groups

One of the major motivations of group theory was the question of whether a polynomial can be solved by radicals. For example, if we have a quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, then¹⁴

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Since the solution contains nothing more than addition, multiplication, and radicals, we say that a quadratic equation is *solvable by radicals*.

Similar formulas can be found for cubic and quartic equations. When mathematicians turned their attention to quintic equations, however, they hit a wall: they weren’t able to use previous techniques to find a “quintic formula”. Eventually, it was shown that this is because some quintic equations are not solvable by radicals. The method they used to show this is based on the following concept.

Definition 3.93. If a group G contains subgroups G_0, G_1, \dots, G_n such that

- $G_0 = \{e\}$;
- $G_n = G$;
- $G_{i-1} \triangleleft G_i$; and
- G_i/G_{i-1} is abelian,

then G is a **solvable group**. The chain of subgroups G_0, \dots, G_n is called a **normal series**.

¹⁴Well, as long as $a \neq 0$. But then you wouldn’t consider it quadratic, would you?

Example 3.94. Any finite abelian group G is solvable: let $G_0 = \{e\}$ and $G_1 = G$. Subgroups of an abelian group are always normal, so $G_0 \triangleleft G_1$. In addition, $X, Y \in G_1/G_0$ implies that $X = x\{e\}$ and $Y = y\{e\}$ for some $x, y \in G_1 = G$. Since G is abelian,

$$XY = (xy)\{e\} = (yx)\{e\} = YX.$$

Example 3.95. The group D_3 is solvable. To see this, let $n = 2$ and $G_1 = \langle \rho \rangle$:

- By Exercise 3.59 on page 97, $\{e\} \triangleleft G_1$. To see that $G_1/\{e\}$ is abelian, note that for any $X, Y \in G_1/\{e\}$, we can write $X = x\{e\}$ and $Y = y\{e\}$ for some $x, y \in G_1$. By definition of G_1 , we can write $x = \rho^a$ and $y = \rho^b$ for some $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. We can then fall back on the commutative property of addition in \mathbb{Z} to show that

$$\begin{aligned} XY &= (xy)\{e\} = \rho^{a+b}\{e\} \\ &= \rho^{b+a}\{e\} = (yx)\{e\} = YX. \end{aligned}$$

- By Exercise 3.71 on page 99 and the fact that $|G_1| = 3$ and $|G_2| = 6$, we know that $G_1 \triangleleft G_2$. The same exercise tells us that G_2/G_1 is abelian.

The following properties of solvable subgroups are very useful in a branch of algebra called *Galois Theory*.

Theorem 3.96. Every quotient group of a solvable group is solvable.

Proof. Let G be a group and $A \triangleleft G$. We need to show that G/A is solvable. Since G is solvable, choose a normal series G_0, \dots, G_n . For each $i = 0, \dots, n$, put

$$A_i = \{gA : g \in G_i\}.$$

We claim that the chain A_0, A_1, \dots, A_n likewise satisfies the definition of a solvable group.

First, we show that $A_{i-1} \triangleleft A_i$ for each $i = 1, \dots, n$. Let $X \in A_i$; by definition, $X = xA$ for some $x \in G_i$. We have to show that $XA_{i-1} = A_{i-1}X$. Let $Y \in A_{i-1}$; by definition, $Y = yA$ for some $y \in G_{i-1}$. Recall that $G_{i-1} \triangleleft G_i$, so there exists $\hat{y} \in G_{i-1}$ such that $xy = \hat{y}x$. Let $\hat{Y} = \hat{y}A$; since $\hat{y} \in G_{i-1}$, $\hat{Y} \in A_{i-1}$. Using substitution and the definition of coset arithmetic, we have

$$XY = (xy)A = (\hat{y}x)A = \hat{Y}X \in A_{i-1}X.$$

Since Y was arbitrary in A_{i-1} , $XA_{i-1} \subseteq A_{i-1}X$. A similar argument shows that $XA_{i-1} \supseteq A_{i-1}X$, so the two are equal. Since X is an arbitrary coset of A_{i-1} in A_i , we conclude that $A_{i-1} \triangleleft A_i$.

Second, we show that A_i/A_{i-1} is abelian. Let $X, Y \in A_i/A_{i-1}$. By definition, we can write $X = SA_{i-1}$ and $Y = TA_{i-1}$ for some $S, T \in A_i$. Again by definition, there exist $s, t \in G_i$ such that $S = sA$ and $T = tA$. Let $U \in A_{i-1}$; we can likewise write $U = uA$ for some $u \in G_{i-1}$. Since G_i/G_{i-1} is abelian, $(st)G_{i-1} = (ts)G_{i-1}$; thus, $(st)u = (ts)v$ for some $v \in G_{i-1}$. By

definition, $vA \in A_{i-1}$. By substitution and the definition of coset arithmetic, we have

$$\begin{aligned} XY &= (ST)A_{i-1} = ((st)A)A_{i-1} \\ &= [(st)A](uA) = ((st)u)A \\ &= ((ts)v)A = [(ts)A](vA) \\ &= ((ts)A)A_{i-1} = (TS)A_{i-1} \\ &= YX. \end{aligned}$$

Since X and Y were arbitrary in the quotient group A_i/A_{i-1} , we conclude that it is abelian.

We have constructed a normal series in G/A ; it follows that G/A is solvable. \square

The following result is also true:

Theorem 3.97. Every subgroup of a solvable group is solvable.

Proving it, however, is a little more difficult. We need the definition of the commutator from Exercises 2.37 on page 53 and 3.72 on page 100.

Definition 3.98. Let G be a group. The **commutator subgroup** G' of G is the intersection of all subgroups of G that contain $[x, y]$ for all $x, y \in G$.

Notice that $G' < G$ by Exercise 3.20.

Notation 3.99. We wrote G' as $[G, G]$ in Exercise 3.72.

Lemma 3.100. For any group G , $G' \triangleleft G$. In addition, G/G' is abelian.

Proof. You showed that $G' \triangleleft G$ in Exercise 3.72 on page 100. To show that G/G' is abelian, let $X, Y \in G/G'$. Write $X = xG'$ and $Y = yG'$ for appropriate $x, y \in G$. By definition, $XY = (xy)G'$. Let $g' \in G'$; by definition, $g' = [a, b]$ for some $a, b \in G$. Since G' is a group, it is closed under the operation, so $[x, y][a, b] \in G'$. Let $z \in G'$ such that $[x, y][a, b] = z$. Rewrite this expression as

$$(x^{-1}y^{-1}xy)[a, b] = z \implies (xy)[a, b] = (yx)z.$$

(Multiply both sides of the equation on the left by yx .) Hence

$$(xy)g' = (xy)[a, b] = (yx)z \in (yx)G'.$$

Since g' was arbitrary, $(xy)G' \subseteq (yx)G'$. A similar argument shows that $(xy)G' \supseteq (yx)G'$. Thus

$$XY = (xy)G' = (yx)G' = YX,$$

and G/G' is abelian. \square

Lemma 3.101. If $H \subseteq G$, then $H' \subseteq G'$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 3.105. \square

Notation 3.102. Define $G^{(0)} = G$ and $G^{(i)} = (G^{(i-1)})'$; that is, $G^{(i)}$ is the commutator subgroup of $G^{(i-1)}$.

Lemma 3.103. A group is solvable if and only if $G^{(n)} = \{e\}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

Proof. (\Rightarrow) Suppose that G is solvable. Let G_0, \dots, G_n be a normal series for G . We claim that $G^{(n-i)} \subseteq G_i$. If this claim were true, then $G^{(n-0)} \subseteq G_0 = \{e\}$, and we would be done. We proceed by induction on $n - i \in \mathbb{N}$.

Inductive base: If $n - i = 0$, then $G^{(n-i)} = G = G_n$. Also, $i = n$, so $G^{(n-i)} = G_n = G_i$, as claimed.

Inductive hypothesis: Assume that the assertion holds for $n - i$.

Inductive step: By definition, $G^{(n-i+1)} = (G^{(n-i)})'$. By the inductive hypothesis, $G^{(n-i)} \subseteq G_i$; by Lemma 3.101, $(G^{(n-i)})' \subseteq G'_i$. Hence

$$G^{(n-i+1)} \subseteq G'_i. \quad (10)$$

Recall from the properties of a normal series that G_i / G_{i-1} is abelian; for any $x, y \in G_i$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (xy) G_{i-1} &= (x G_{i-1}) (y G_{i-1}) \\ &= (y G_{i-1}) (x G_{i-1}) = (yx) G_{i-1}. \end{aligned}$$

By Lemma 3.28 on page 88, $(yx)^{-1}(xy) \in G_{i-1}$; in other words, $[x, y] = x^{-1}y^{-1}xy \in G_{i-1}$. Since x and y were arbitrary in G_i , we have $G'_i \subseteq G_{i-1}$. Along with (10), this implies that $G^{(n-(i-1))} = G^{(n-i+1)} \subseteq G_{i-1}$.

We have shown the claim; thus, $G^{(n)} = \{e\}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

(\Leftarrow) Suppose that $G^{(n)} = \{e\}$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We have

$$\{e\} = G^{(n)} < G^{(n-1)} < \dots < G^{(0)} = G.$$

By Lemma 3.100, the subgroups form a normal series; that is,

$$\{e\} = G^{(n)} \triangleleft G^{(n-1)} \triangleleft \dots \triangleleft G^{(0)} = G$$

and $G^{(n-i)} / G^{(n-(i-1))}$ is abelian for each $i = 0, \dots, n-1$. As this is a normal series, we have shown that G is solvable. \square

We can now prove Theorem 3.97.

Proof of Theorem 3.97. Let $H < G$. Assume G is solvable; by Lemma 3.103, $G^{(n)} = \{e\}$. By Lemma 3.101, $H^{(i)} \subseteq G^{(i)}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, so $H^{(n)} \subseteq \{e\}$. By the definition of a group, $H^{(n)} \supseteq \{e\}$, so the two are equal. By the same lemma, H is solvable. \square

Exercises.

Exercise 3.104. Explain why Ω_n is solvable for any $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

Exercise 3.105. Show that if $H \subseteq G$, then $H' \subseteq G'$.

Exercise 3.106. Show that Q_8 is solvable.

Exercise 3.107. In the textbook *God Created the Integers...* the theoretical physicist Stephen Hawking reprints some of the greatest mathematical results in history, adding some commentary. For an excerpt from Evariste Galois’ *Memoirs*, Hawking sums up the main result this way.

To be brief, Galois demonstrated that the general polynomial of degree n could be solved by radicals if and only if every subgroup N of the group of permutations S_n is a normal subgroup. Then he demonstrated that every subgroup of S_n is normal for all $n \leq 4$ but not for any $n > 5$.

—p. 105

Unfortunately, Hawking’s explanation is completely wrong, and this exercise leads you towards an explanation as to why.¹⁵ You have not yet studied the groups of permutations S_n , but you will learn in Section 5.1 that the group S_3 is really the same as D_3 . So we look at D_3 , instead.

- (a) Find all six subgroups of D_3 .
- (b) It is known that the general polynomial of degree 3 can be solved by radicals. According to the quote above, what must be true about all the subgroups of D_3 ?
- (c) Why is Hawking’s explanation of Galois’ result “obviously” wrong?

(To be precise, S_3 is “isomorphic” to D_3 . We discuss group isomorphisms in Chapter 4 on the next page. Exercise 5.37 of Chapter ?? on page ?? asks you to show that $S_3 \cong D_3$. We talk about solvability by radicals in Chapter 9 on page 249.)

¹⁵Perhaps Hawking was trying to simplify what Galois actually showed, and went too far. (I’ve done much worse in my lifetime.) In fact, Galois showed that a polynomial of degree n could be solved by radicals if and only if a corresponding group, now called its **Galois group**, was a solvable group. He then showed that the Galois group of $x^5 + 2x + 5$ was not a solvable group.

Chapter 4:

Isomorphisms

We have on occasion observed that different groups have the same Cayley table. We have also talked about different groups having the same structure: regardless of whether a group of order two is additive or multiplicative, its elements behave in exactly the same fashion. The groups may consist of elements whose construction was quite different, and the definition of the operation may also be different, but the “group behavior” is nevertheless identical.

We saw in Chapter 1 that algebraists describe such a relationship between two monoids as *isomorphic*. Isomorphism for groups has the same intuitive meaning as isomorphism for monoids:

If two groups G and H have identical group structure,
we say that G and H are *isomorphic*.

We want to study isomorphism of groups in quite a bit of detail, so to define isomorphism precisely, we start by reconsidering another topic that you studied in the past, functions. There we will also introduce the related notion of *homomorphism*. Despite the same basic intuitive definition, the precise definition of group homomorphism turns out simpler than for monoids. This is the focus of Section 4.1. Section 4.2 lists some results that should help convince you that the existence of an isomorphism does, in fact, show that two groups have an identical group structure. Section 4.3 describes how we can create new isomorphisms from a homomorphism’s *kernel*, a special subgroup defined by a homomorphism. Section 4.4 introduces a class of isomorphism that is important for later applications, an *automorphism*.

4.1: Homomorphisms

Groups have more structure than monoids. Just as a monoid homomorphism would require that we preserve both identities and the operation (page 31), you might infer that the requirements for a group isomorphism are stricter than those for a monoid isomorphism. After all, you have to preserve not only identities and the operation, but inverses as well.

In fact, the additional structure of groups allows us to have *fewer* requirements for a group homomorphism.

Group isomorphisms

Definition 4.1. Let (G, \times) and $(H, +)$ be groups. If there exists a function $f : G \rightarrow H$ that preserves the operation, which is to say that

$$f(xy) = f(x) + f(y) \quad \text{for every } x, y \in G,$$

then we call f a **group homomorphism**.

This definition requires the preservation of neither inverses nor identities! You might conclude from this that group homomorphism aren’t even monoid homomorphisms; we will see in a moment that this is quite untrue!

Notation 4.2. As with monoids, you have to be careful with the fact that different groups have different operations. Depending on the context, the proper way to describe the homomorphism property may be

- $f(xy) = f(x) + f(y)$;
- $f(x + y) = f(x)f(y)$;
- $f(x \circ y) = f(x) \odot f(y)$;
- etc.

Example 4.3. A trivial example of a homomorphism, but an important one, is the identity function $\iota : G \rightarrow G$ by $\iota(g) = g$ for all $g \in G$. It should be clear that this is a homomorphism, since for all $g, h \in G$ we have

$$\iota(gh) = gh = \iota(g)\iota(h).$$

For a non-trivial homomorphism, let $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 2\mathbb{Z}$ by $f(x) = 4x$. Then f is a group homomorphism, since for any $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have

$$f(x) + f(y) = 4x + 4y = 4(x + y) = f(x + y).$$

The homomorphism property should remind you of certain special functions and operations that you have studied in Linear Algebra or Calculus. Recall from Exercise 2.29 that \mathbb{R}^+ , the set of all positive real numbers, is a multiplicative group.

Example 4.4. Let $f : (\text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R}), \times) \rightarrow (\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}, \times)$ by $f(A) = \det A$. As you should have learned in Linear Algebra, a property of determinants tells us that for any two square matrices A and B , $\det A \cdot \det B = \det(AB)$. Thus

$$f(A) \cdot f(B) = \det A \cdot \det B = \det A \cdot \det B = \det(AB) = f(AB),$$

implying that f is a homomorphism of groups.

Let's look at a clockwork group.

Example 4.5. Let $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $n > 1$, and let $f : (\mathbb{Z}, +) \rightarrow (\mathbb{Z}_n, +)$ by the assignment $f(x) = [x]_n$. We claim that f is a homomorphism. *Why?* From Lemma 3.81, we know that for any $x, y \in \mathbb{Z}_n$, $f(x + y) = [x + y]_n = [x]_n + [y]_n = f(x) + f(y)$.

By preserving the operation, we preserve an enormous amount of information about a group. If there is a homomorphism f from G to H , then elements of the **image** of G ,

$$f(G) = \{h \in H : \exists g \in G \text{ such that } f(g) = h\}$$

act the same way as their **preimages** in G .

This does *not* imply that the *group structure* is the same. In Example 4.5, for example, f is a homomorphism from an infinite group to a finite group; even if the group operations behave in a similar way, the groups themselves are inherently different. If we can show that the groups have the same “size” in addition to a similar operation, then the groups are, for all intents and purposes, identical.

How do we decide that two groups have the same size? For finite groups, this is “easy”: count

the elements. We can't do that for infinite groups, so we need something a little more general.¹⁶

Definition 4.6. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. If f is also a bijection, then we say that G is **isomorphic** to H , write $G \cong H$, and call f an **isomorphism**.

Example 4.7. Recall the homomorphisms of Example 4.3,

$$\iota : G \rightarrow G \quad \text{by} \quad \iota(g) = g \quad \text{and} \quad f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 2\mathbb{Z} \quad \text{by} \quad f(x) = 4x.$$

First we show that ι is an isomorphism. We already know it's a homomorphism, so we need only show that it's a bijection.

one-to-one: Let $g, b \in G$. Assume that $\iota(g) = \iota(b)$. By definition of ι , $g = b$. Since g and b were arbitrary in G , ι is one-to-one.

onto: Let $g \in G$. We need to find $x \in G$ such that $\iota(x) = g$. Using the definition of ι , $x = g$ does the job. Since g was arbitrary in G , ι is onto.

Now we show that f is not a bijection, and hence not an isomorphism.

not onto: There is no element $a \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $f(a) = 2$. If there were, $4a = 2$. The only possible solution to this equation is $a = 1/2 \notin \mathbb{Z}$.

This is despite the fact that f is one-to-one:

one-to-one: Let $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Assume that $f(a) = f(b)$. By definition of f , $4a = 4b$. Then $4(a - b) = 0$; by the zero product property of the integers, $4 = 0$ or $a - b = 0$. Since $4 \neq 0$, we must have $a - b = 0$, or $a = b$. We assumed $f(a) = f(b)$ and showed that $a = b$. Since a and b were arbitrary, f is one-to-one.

Example 4.8. Recall the homomorphism of Example 4.4,

$$f : \text{GL}_m(\mathbb{R}) \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^+ \quad \text{by} \quad f(A) = |\det A|.$$

We claim that f is onto, but not one-to-one.

That f is not one-to-one: Observe that f maps both of the following two diagonal matrices to 2, even though the matrices are unequal:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & & & \\ & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & \\ & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & 2 & & \\ & & 1 & \\ & & & 1 & \\ & & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix}.$$

(Unmarked entries are zeroes.)

¹⁶The standard method in set theory of showing that two sets are the same “size” is to show that there exists a one-to-one, onto function between the sets. For example, one can use this definition to show that \mathbb{Z} and \mathbb{Q} are the same size, but \mathbb{Z} and \mathbb{R} are not. So an isomorphism is a homomorphism that also shows that two sets are the same size.

That f is onto: Let $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$; then $f(A) = x$ where A is the diagonal matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} x & & & \\ & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & \\ & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix}.$$

(Again, unmarked entries are zeroes.)

We *cannot* conclude from these examples that $\mathbb{Z} \not\cong 2\mathbb{Z}$ and that $\mathbb{R}^+ \not\cong \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. *Why not?* In each case, we were considering only one of the (possibly many) homomorphisms. It is quite possible that we could find different homomorphisms that *would* be bijections, showing that $\mathbb{Z} \cong 2\mathbb{Z}$ and that $\mathbb{R}^+ \cong \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. The first assertion is in fact true, while the second is not; you will explain why in the exercises.

Properties of group homomorphism

We turn now to three important properties of group *homomorphism*. For the rest of this section, we assume that (G, \times) and (H, \circ) are groups. Notice that the operations are both “multiplicative”.

We still haven’t explored the relationship between group homomorphisms and monoid homomorphisms. If a group homomorphism has fewer criteria, can it actually guarantee more structure? Theorem 4.9 answers in the affirmative.

Theorem 4.9. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Denote the identity of G by e_G , and the identity of H by e_H . Then f
 preserves identities: $f(e_G) = e_H$; and
 preserves inverses: for every $x \in G$, $f(x^{-1}) = f(x)^{-1}$.

Read the proof below carefully, and identify precisely why this theorem holds for groups, but not for monoids.

Proof. That f preserves identities: Let $x \in G$, and $y = f(x)$. By the property of homomorphisms,

$$e_H y = y = f(x) = f(e_G x) = f(e_G) f(x) = f(e_G) y.$$

By the transitive property of equality,

$$e_H y = f(e_G) y.$$

Multiply both sides of the equation *on the right* by y^{-1} to obtain

$$e_H = f(e_G).$$

This shows that f , an arbitrary homomorphism of arbitrary groups, maps the identity of the domain to the identity of the range.

That f preserves inverses: Let $x \in G$. By the property of homomorphisms and by the fact that f preserves identity,

$$e_H = f(e_G) = f(x \cdot x^{-1}) = f(x) \cdot f(x^{-1}).$$

Thus

$$e_H = f(x) \cdot f(x^{-1}).$$

Pay careful attention to what this equation says! “The product of $f(x)$ and $f(x^{-1})$ is the identity,” which means that those two elements must be inverses! Hence, $f(x^{-1})$ is the inverse of $f(x)$, which we write as

$$f(x^{-1}) = f(x)^{-1}.$$

□

The trick, then, is that the property of inverses guaranteed to groups allows us to do more than we can do in a monoid. In this case, *more* structure in the group led to *fewer* conditions for equivalence. This is not true in general; we discuss rings, we will see that more structure can lead to more conditions.

If homomorphisms preserve the inverse after all, it makes sense that “the inverse of the image is the image of the inverse.” Corollary 4.10 affirms this.

Corollary 4.10. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Then $f(x^{-1})^{-1} = f(x)$ for every $x \in G$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 4.23.

□

It will probably not surprise you that homomorphisms preserve powers of an element.

Theorem 4.11. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Then f preserves powers of elements of G . That is, if $f(g) = h$, then $f(g^n) = f(g)^n = h^n$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 4.28.

□

Naturally, if homomorphisms preserve powers of an element, they must also preserve cyclic groups.

Corollary 4.12. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. If $G = \langle g \rangle$ is a cyclic group, then $f(g)$ determines f completely. In other words, the image $f(G)$ is a cyclic group, and $f(G) = \langle f(g) \rangle$.

Proof. Assume that $G = \langle g \rangle$; that is, G is cyclic. We have to show that two sets are equal. By definition, for any $x \in G$ we can find $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $x = g^n$.

First we show that $f(G) \subseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$. Let $y \in f(G)$ and choose $x \in G$ such that $y = f(x)$. Since G is a cyclic group generated by g , we can choose $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $x = g^n$. By substitution and Theorem 4.11, $y = f(x) = f(g^n) = f(g)^n$. By definition, $y \in \langle f(g) \rangle$. Since y was arbitrary in $f(G)$, $f(G) \subseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$.

Now we show that $f(G) \supseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$. Let $y \in \langle f(g) \rangle$, and choose $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $y = f(g)^n$. By Theorem 4.11, $y = f(g^n)$. Since $g^n \in G$, $f(g^n) \in f(G)$, so $y \in f(G)$. Since y was arbitrary in $\langle f(g) \rangle$, $f(G) \supseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$.

We have shown that $f(G) \subseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$ and $f(G) \supseteq \langle f(g) \rangle$. By equality of sets, $f(G) = \langle f(g) \rangle$. □

The final property of homomorphism that we check here is an important algebraic property of functions; you may have seen it before in linear algebra. It will prove important in subsequent sections and chapters.

Definition 4.13. Let G and H be groups, and $f : G \rightarrow H$ a homomorphism. Let

$$Z = \{g \in G : f(g) = e_H\};$$

that is, Z is the set of all elements of G that f maps to the identity of H . We call Z the **kernel** of f , written $\ker f$.

Theorem 4.14. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Then $\ker f \triangleleft G$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 4.25. □

Exercises.

Exercise 4.15.

- (a) Show that $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 2\mathbb{Z}$ by $f(x) = 2x$ is an isomorphism. Hence $\mathbb{Z} \cong 2\mathbb{Z}$.
- (b) Show that $\mathbb{Z} \cong n\mathbb{Z}$ for every nonzero integer n .

Exercise 4.16. Let $n \geq 1$ and $f : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_n$ by $f(a) = [a]_n$.

- (a) Show that f is a homomorphism.
- (b) Explain why f cannot possibly be an isomorphism.
- (c) Determine $\ker f$. (It might help to use a specific value of n first.)
- (d) Indicate how we know that $\mathbb{Z} / \ker f \cong \mathbb{Z}_n$. (Eventually, we will show that $G / \ker f \cong H$ for *any* homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$ that is onto.)

Exercise 4.17. Show that \mathbb{Z}_2 is isomorphic to the group of order two from Example 2.9 on page 47. *Caution!* Remember to denote the operations properly: \mathbb{Z}_2 is additive, but we used \circ for the operation of the group of order two.

Exercise 4.18. Show that \mathbb{Z}_2 is isomorphic to the Boolean xor group of Exercise 2.21 on page 51. *Caution!* Remember to denote the operation in the Boolean xor group correctly.

Exercise 4.19. Show that $\mathbb{Z}_n \cong \Omega_n$ for $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$.

Exercise 4.20. Suppose we try to define $f : Q_8 \rightarrow \Omega_4$ by $f(\mathbf{i}) = f(\mathbf{j}) = f(\mathbf{k}) = i$, and $f(\mathbf{xy}) = f(\mathbf{x})f(\mathbf{y})$ for all other $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \in Q_8$. Show that f is *not* a homomorphism.

Exercise 4.21. Show that \mathbb{Z} is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_0 . (Because of this, people generally don't pay attention to \mathbb{Z}_0 . See also Exercise 3.85 on page 104.)

Exercise 4.22. Recall the subgroup L of \mathbb{R}^2 from Exercises 3.16 on page 84, 3.33 on page 89, and 3.66 on page 99. Show that $L \cong \mathbb{R}$.

Claim: $\ker \varphi \triangleleft G$.

Proof:

1. By _____, it suffices to show that for any $g \in G$, $\ker \varphi = g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1}$. So, let $g \in$ _____.
 2. First we show that $(\ker \varphi) \supseteq g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1}$. Let $x \in g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1}$.
 - (a) By _____, there exists $k \in \ker \varphi$ such that $x = g k g^{-1}$.
 - (b) By _____, $\varphi(x) = \varphi(g k g^{-1})$.
 - (c) By _____, $\varphi(x) = \varphi(g) \varphi(k) \varphi(g)^{-1}$.
 - (d) By _____, $\varphi(x) = \varphi(g) e_H \varphi(g)^{-1}$.
 - (e) By _____, $\varphi(x) = e_H$.
 - (f) By definition of the kernel, _____.
 - (g) Since _____, $g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1} \subseteq \ker \varphi$.
 3. Now we show the converse; that is, _____. Let $k \in \ker \varphi$.
 - (a) Let $x = g^{-1} k g$. Notice that if $x \in \ker \varphi$, then we would have what we want, since in this case _____.
 - (b) In fact, $x \in \ker \varphi$. After all, _____.
 - (c) Since _____, $\ker \varphi \subseteq g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1}$.
 4. By _____, $\ker \varphi = g (\ker \varphi) g^{-1}$.
-

Figure 4.1. Material for Exercise 4.25

Exercise 4.23. Prove Corollary 4.10.

Exercise 4.24. Suppose f is an isomorphism. How many elements does $\ker f$ contain?

Exercise 4.25. Let G and H be groups, and $\varphi : G \rightarrow H$ a homomorphism.

- (a) Show that $\ker \varphi < G$.
- (b) Fill in each blank of Figure 4.1 with the appropriate justification or statement.

Exercise 4.26. Let φ be a homomorphism from a finite group G to a group H . Recall from Exercise 4.25 that $\ker \varphi < G$. Explain why $|\ker \varphi| \cdot |\varphi(G)| = |G|$. (This is sometimes called **the Homomorphism Theorem**.)

Exercise 4.27. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be an isomorphism. Isomorphisms are by definition one-to-one functions, so f has an inverse function f^{-1} . Show that $f^{-1} : H \rightarrow G$ is also an isomorphism.

Exercise 4.28. Prove Theorem 4.11.

Exercise 4.29. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Assume that G is abelian.

- (a) Show that $f(G)$ is abelian.
- (b) Is H abelian? Explain why or why not.

Exercise 4.30. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Let $A < G$. Show that $f(A) < H$.

Exercise 4.31. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be a homomorphism of groups. Let $A < G$.

- (a) Show that $f(A) < f(G)$.
- (b) Do you think that $f(A) < H$? Justify your answer.

Exercise 4.32. Show that if G is a group, then $G / \{e\} \cong G$ and $G/G \cong \{e\}$.

Exercise 4.33. In Chapter 1, the definition of an isomorphism for *monoids* required that the function map the identity to the identity (Definition 1.75 on page 31). By contrast, Theorem 4.9 shows that the preservation of the operation guarantees that a group homomorphism maps the identity to the identity, so we don't need to require this in the definition of an isomorphism for *groups* (Definition 4.6).

The difference between a group and a monoid is the existence of an inverse. Use this to show that, in a monoid, you *can* have a function that preserves the operation, but not the identity. In other words, show that Theorem 4.9 is false for monoids.

4.2: Consequences of isomorphism

Throughout this section, (G, \times) and (H, \circ) are groups.

The purpose of this section is to show why we use the name *isomorphism*: if two groups are isomorphic, then they are indistinguishable *as groups*. The elements of the sets are different, and the operation may be defined differently, but as groups the two are identical. Suppose that two groups G and H are isomorphic. We will show that

- isomorphism is an equivalence relation;
- G is abelian iff H is abelian;
- G is cyclic iff H is cyclic;
- every subgroup A of G corresponds to a subgroup A' of H (in particular, if A is of order n , so is A');
- every normal subgroup N of G corresponds to a normal subgroup N' of H ;
- the quotient group G/N corresponds to a quotient group H/N' .

All of these depend on the existence of an isomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$. In particular, uniqueness is guaranteed only for any one isomorphism; if two different isomorphisms f, f' exist between G and H , then a subgroup A of G may well correspond to two distinct subgroups B and B' of H .

Isomorphism is an equivalence relation

The fact that isomorphism is an equivalence relation will prove helpful with the equivalence properties; for example, “ G is cyclic iff H is cyclic.” So, we start with that one first.

Theorem 4.34. Isomorphism is an equivalence relation. That is, \cong satisfies the reflexive, symmetric, and transitive properties.

Proof. First we show that \cong is reflexive. Let G be any group, and let ι be the identity homomorphism from Example 4.3. We showed in Example 4.7 that ι is an isomorphism. Since $\iota : G \rightarrow G$, $G \cong G$. Since G was an arbitrary group, \cong is reflexive.

Next, we show that \cong is symmetric. Let G, H be groups and assume that $G \cong H$. By definition, there exists an isomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$. By Exercise 4.27, f^{-1} is also a isomorphism. Hence $H \cong G$.

Finally, we show that \cong is transitive. Let G, H, K be groups and assume that $G \cong H$ and $H \cong K$. By definition, there exist isomorphisms $f : G \rightarrow H$ and $g : H \rightarrow K$. Define $h : G \rightarrow K$ by

$$h(x) = g(f(x)).$$

We claim that h is an isomorphism. We show each requirement in turn:

That h is a homomorphism, let $x, y \in G$. By definition of h , $h(x \cdot y) = g(f(x \cdot y))$. Applying the fact that g and f are both homomorphisms,

$$h(x \cdot y) = g(f(x \cdot y)) = g(f(x) \cdot f(y)) = g(f(x)) \cdot g(f(y)) = h(x) \cdot h(y).$$

Thus h is a homomorphism.

That h is one-to-one, let $x, y \in G$ and assume that $h(x) = h(y)$. By definition of h ,

$$g(f(x)) = g(f(y)).$$

By hypothesis, g is an isomorphism, so by definition it is one-to-one, so if its outputs are equal, so are its inputs. In other words,

$$f(x) = f(y).$$

Similarly, f is an isomorphism, so $x = y$. Since x and y were arbitrary in G , h is one-to-one.

That h is onto, let $z \in K$. We claim that there exists $x \in G$ such that $h(x) = z$. Since g is an isomorphism, it is by definition onto, so there exists $y \in H$ such that $g(y) = z$. Since f is an isomorphism, there exists $x \in G$ such that $f(x) = y$. Putting this together with the definition of h , we see that

$$z = g(y) = g(f(x)) = h(x).$$

Since z was arbitrary in K , h is onto.

We have shown that h is a one-to-one, onto homomorphism. Thus h is an isomorphism, and $G \cong K$. \square

Isomorphism preserves basic properties of groups

We now show that isomorphism preserves two basic properties of groups that we introduced in Chapter 2: abelian and commutative. Both proofs make use of the fact that isomorphism is an equivalence relation; in particular, that the relation is symmetric.

Theorem 4.35. Suppose that $G \cong H$. Then G is abelian iff H is abelian.

Proof. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be an isomorphism. Assume that G is abelian. We must show that H is abelian. By Exercise 4.29, $f(G)$ is abelian. Since f is an isomorphism, and therefore onto, $f(G) = H$. Hence H is abelian.

We turn to the converse. Assume that H is abelian. Since isomorphism is symmetric, $H \cong G$. Along with the above argument, this implies that if H is abelian, then G is, too.

Hence, G is abelian iff H is abelian. \square

Theorem 4.36. Suppose $G \cong H$. Then G is cyclic iff H is cyclic.

Proof. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be an isomorphism. Assume that G is cyclic. We must show that H is cyclic; that is, we must show that every element of H is generated by a fixed element of H .

Since G is cyclic, by definition $G = \langle g \rangle$ for some $g \in G$. Let $h = f(g)$; then $h \in H$. We claim that $H = \langle h \rangle$.

Let $x \in H$. Since f is an isomorphism, it is onto, so there exists $a \in G$ such that $f(a) = x$. Since G is cyclic, there exists $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $a = g^n$. By Theorem 4.11,

$$x = f(a) = f(g^n) = f(g)^n = h^n.$$

Since x was an arbitrary element of H and x is generated by h , all elements of H are generated by h . Hence $H = \langle h \rangle$ is cyclic.

Since isomorphism is symmetric, $H \cong G$. Along with the above argument, this implies that if H is cyclic, then G is, too.

Hence, G is cyclic iff H is cyclic. □

Isomorphism preserves the structure of subgroups

Theorem 4.37. Suppose $G \cong H$. Every subgroup A of G is isomorphic to a subgroup B of H . Moreover, each of the following holds.

- (A) A is of finite order n iff B is of finite order n .
- (B) A is normal iff B is normal.

Proof. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be an isomorphism. Let A be a subgroup of G . By Exercise 4.30, $f(A) < H$.

We claim that f is one-to-one and onto from A to $f(A)$. Onto is immediate from the definition of $f(A)$. The one-to-one property holds because f is one-to-one in G and $A \subseteq G$. We have shown that $f(A) < H$ and that f is one-to-one and onto from A to $f(A)$. Hence $A \cong f(A)$.

Claim (A) follows from the fact that f is a bijection: if one of A or B has finite order n , then f cannot be a one-to-one and into if the other is not.

For claim (B), assume $A \triangleleft G$. We want to show that $B \triangleleft H$; that is, $xB = Bx$ for every $x \in H$. Let $x \in H$ and $y \in B$; since f is an isomorphism, it is onto, so $f(g) = x$ and $f(a) = y$ for some $g \in G$ and some $a \in A$. By substitution and the homomorphism property,

$$xy = f(g)f(a) = f(ga).$$

Since $A \triangleleft G$, $gA = Ag$, so there exists $a' \in A$ such that $ga = a'g$. Let $y' = f(a')$. By substitution and the homomorphism property,

$$xy = f(a'g) = f(a')f(g) = y'x.$$

By definition and substitution, we have $y' = f(a') \in f(A) = B$. We conclude that, $xy = y'x \in Bx$.

We have shown that for arbitrary $x \in H$ and arbitrary $y \in B$, there exists $y' \in B$ such that $xy = y'x$. Hence $xB \subseteq Bx$. A similar argument shows that $xB \supseteq Bx$, so $xB = Bx$. This is the definition of a normal subgroup, so $B \triangleleft H$.

Since isomorphism is symmetric, $B \cong A$. Along with the above argument, this implies that if $B \triangleleft H$, then $A \triangleleft G$, as well.

Hence, A is normal iff B is normal. □

Theorem 4.38. Suppose $G \cong H$ as groups. Every quotient group of G is isomorphic to a quotient group of H .

We use Lemma 3.28(CE3) on page 88 on coset equality heavily in this proof; you may want to go back and review it.

Proof. Let $f : G \rightarrow H$ be an isomorphism. Consider an arbitrary quotient group of G defined as G/A , where $A \triangleleft G$. Let $B = f(A)$; by Theorem 4.37 $B \triangleleft H$, so H/B is a quotient group. We want to show that $G/A \cong H/B$.

To that end, define a new function $f_A : G/A \rightarrow H/B$ by

$$f_A(X) = f(g)B \quad \text{where} \quad X = gA \in G/A.$$

Keep in mind that f_A maps cosets to cosets, using the relation f from group elements to group elements.

We claim that f_A is an isomorphism. You probably expect that we “only” have to show that f_A is a bijection and a homomorphism, but this is not true. We have to show first that f_A is well-defined. Do you remember what this means? If not, reread page 93. Once you understand the definition, ask yourself, why do we have to show f_A is well-defined?

Just we must define the operation for cosets to give the same result regardless of two cosets’ representation, a function on cosets must give the same result regardless of that coset’s representation. Let X be any coset in G/A . It is usually the case that X can have more than one representation; that is, we can find $g \neq \hat{g}$ where $X = gA = \hat{g}A$. For example, suppose you want to build a function from \mathbb{Z}_5 to another set. Suppose that we want $f([2]) = x$. Recall that in \mathbb{Z}_5 , $\dots = [-3] = [2] = [7] = [12] = \dots$. If f is defined in such a way that we would think $f([-3]) \neq x$, we would have a problem, since we need to ensure that $f([-3]) = f([2])$! For another example, consider D_3 . We know that $\varphi A_3 = (\rho\varphi)A_3$, even though $\varphi \neq \rho\varphi$; see Example 3.55 on page 95. If $f(g) \neq f(\hat{g})$, then $f_A(X)$ would have more than one possible value, since

$$f_A(X) = f_A(gA) = f(g) \neq f(\hat{g}) = f_A(\hat{g}A) = f(X).$$

In other words, f_A would not be a function, since at least one element of the domain (X) would correspond to at least two elements of the range ($f(g)$ and $f(\hat{g})$). See Figure 4.2. A homomorphism must first be a function, so if f_A is not even a function, then it is not well-defined.

That f_A is well-defined: Let $X \in G/A$ and consider two representations g_1A and g_2A of X . Let $Y_1 = f_A(g_1A)$ and $Y_2 = f_A(g_2A)$. By definition of f_A ,

$$Y_1 = f(g_1)B \quad \text{and} \quad Y_2 = f(g_2)B.$$

To show that f_A is well-defined, we must show that $Y_1 = Y_2$. By hypothesis, $g_1A = g_2A$. Lemma 3.28(CE3) implies that $g_2^{-1}g_1 \in A$. Recall that $f(A) = B$; by definition of the image, $f(g_2^{-1}g_1) \in B$. The homomorphism property implies that

$$f(g_2)^{-1}f(g_1) = f(g_2^{-1}g_1) = f(g_2^{-1}g_1) \in B.$$

Lemma 3.28(CE3) again implies that $f(g_1)B = f(g_2)B$, or $Y_1 = Y_2$, so there is no ambiguity in the definition of f_A as the image of X in H/B ; the function is well-defined.

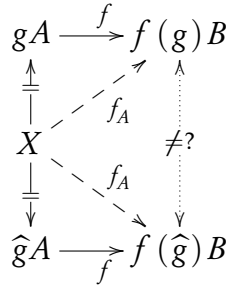


Figure 4.2. When defining a mapping whose domain is a quotient group, we must be careful to ensure that a coset with different representations has the same value. In the diagram above, X has the two representations gA and $\widehat{g}A$, and f_A is defined using f . In this case, is $f(g) = f(\widehat{g})$? If not, then $f_A(X)$ would have two different values, and f_A would not be a function.

That f_A is a homomorphism: Let $X, Y \in G/A$ and write $X = g_1A$ and $Y = g_2A$ for appropriate $g_1, g_2 \in G$. Now

$$\begin{aligned}
 f_A(XY) &= f_A((g_1A) \cdot (g_2A)) && \text{(substitution)} \\
 &= f_A(g_1g_2 \cdot A) && \text{(coset multiplication in } G/A) \\
 &= f(g_1g_2)B && \text{(definition of } f_A) \\
 &= (f(g_1)f(g_2)) \cdot B && \text{(homomorphism property)} \\
 &= f(g_1)A' \cdot f(g_2)B && \text{(coset multiplication in } H/B) \\
 &= f_A(g_1A) \cdot f_A(g_2A) && \text{(definition of } f_A) \\
 &= f_A(X) \cdot f_A(Y) && \text{(substitution).}
 \end{aligned}$$

By definition, f_A is a homomorphism.

That f_A is one-to-one: Let $X, Y \in G/A$ and assume that $f_A(X) = f_A(Y)$. Let $g_1, g_2 \in G$ such that $X = g_1A$ and $Y = g_2A$. The definition of f_A implies that

$$f(g_1)B = f_A(X) = f_A(Y) = f(g_2)B,$$

so by Lemma 3.28(CE3) $f(g_2)^{-1}f(g_1) \in B$. Recall that $B = f(A)$, so there exists $a \in A$ such that $f(a) = f(g_2)^{-1}f(g_1)$. The homomorphism property implies that

$$f(a) = f(g_2^{-1})f(g_1) = f(g_2^{-1}g_1).$$

Recall that f is an isomorphism, hence one-to-one. The definition of one-to-one implies that

$$g_2^{-1}g_1 = a \in A.$$

Applying Lemma 3.28(CE3) again gives us $g_1A = g_2A$, and

$$X = g_1A = g_2A = Y.$$

We took arbitrary $X, Y \in G/A$ and showed that if $f_A(X) = f_A(Y)$, then $X = Y$. It follows that

f_A is one-to-one.

That f_A is onto: You do it! See Exercise 4.39. □

Exercises.

Exercise 4.39. Show that the function f_A defined in the proof of Theorem 4.38 is onto.

Exercise 4.40. Recall from Exercise 2.85 on page 79 that $\langle i \rangle$ is a cyclic group of Q_8 .

- (a) Show that $\langle i \rangle \cong \mathbb{Z}_4$ by giving an explicit isomorphism.
- (b) Let A be a proper subgroup of $\langle i \rangle$. Find the corresponding subgroup of \mathbb{Z}_4 .
- (c) Use the proof of Theorem 4.38 to determine the quotient group of \mathbb{Z}_4 to which $\langle i \rangle / A$ is isomorphic.

Exercise 4.41. Recall from Exercise 4.22 on page 115 that the set

$$L = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2 : x = (a, a) \exists a \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

defined in Exercise 3.16 on page 84 is isomorphic to \mathbb{R} .

- (a) Show that $\mathbb{Z} \triangleleft \mathbb{R}$.
- (b) Give the precise definition of \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} .
- (c) Explain why we can think of \mathbb{R}/\mathbb{Z} as the set of classes $[a]$ such that $a \in [0, 1)$. Choose one such $[a]$ and describe the elements of this class.
- (d) Find the subgroup H of L that corresponds to $\mathbb{Z} < \mathbb{R}$. What do this section's theorems imply that you can conclude about H and L/H ?
- (e) Use the homomorphism f_A defined in the proof of Theorem 4.38 to find the images $f_{\mathbb{Z}}(\mathbb{Z})$ and $f_{\mathbb{Z}}(\pi + \mathbb{Z})$.
- (f) Use the answer to (c) to describe L/H intuitively. Choose an element of L/H and describe the elements of this class.

4.3: The Isomorphism Theorem

In this section, we identify an important relationship between a subgroup $A < G$ that has a special relationship to a homomorphism, and the image of the quotient group $f(G/A)$. First, an example.

Motivating example

Example 4.42. Recall $A_3 = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\} \triangleleft D_3$ from Example 3.55. We saw that D_3/A_3 has only two elements, so it must be isomorphic to any group of two elements. First we show this explicitly: Let $\mu : D_3/A_3 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_2$ by

$$\mu(X) = \begin{cases} 0, & X = A_3; \\ 1, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Is μ a homomorphism? Recall that A_3 is the identity element of D_3/A_3 , so for any $X \in D_3/A_3$

$$\mu(X \cdot A_3) = \mu(X) = \mu(X) + 0 = \mu(X) + \mu(A_3).$$

This verifies the homomorphism property for all products in the Cayley table of D_3/A_3 except $(\varphi A_3) \cdot (\varphi A_3)$, which is easy to check:

$$\mu((\varphi A_3) \cdot (\varphi A_3)) = \mu(A_3) = 0 = 1 + 1 = \mu(\varphi A_3) + \mu(\varphi A_3).$$

Hence μ is a homomorphism. The property of isomorphism follows from the facts that

- $\mu(A_3) \neq \mu(\varphi A_3)$, so μ is one-to-one, and
- both 0 and 1 have preimages, so μ is onto.

Notice further that $\ker \mu = A_3$.

Something subtle is at work here. Let $f : D_3 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_2$ by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \in A_3; \\ 1, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Is f a homomorphism? The elements of A_3 are ι , ρ , and ρ^2 ; f maps these elements to zero, and the other three elements of D_3 to 1. Let $x, y \in D_3$ and consider the various cases:

Case 1. Suppose first that $x, y \in A_3$. Since A_3 is a group, closure implies that $xy \in A_3$. Thus

$$f(xy) = 0 = 0 + 0 = f(x) + f(y).$$

Case 2. Next, suppose that $x \in A_3$ and $y \notin A_3$. Since A_3 is a group, closure implies that $xy \notin A_3$. (Otherwise $xy = z$ for some $z \in A_3$, and multiplication by the inverse implies that $y = x^{-1}z \in A_3$, a contradiction.) Thus

$$f(xy) = 1 = 0 + 1 = f(x) + f(y).$$

Case 3. If $x \notin A_3$ and $y \in A_3$, then a similar argument shows that $f(xy) = f(x) + f(y)$.

Case 4. Finally, suppose $x, y \notin A_3$. Inspection of the Cayley table of D_3 (Exercise 2.45 on page 61) shows that $xy \in A_3$. Hence

$$f(xy) = 0 = 1 + 1 = f(x) + f(y).$$

We have shown that f is a homomorphism from D_3 to \mathbb{Z}_2 . Again, $\ker f = A_3$.

In addition, consider the function $\eta : D_3 \rightarrow D_3/A_3$ by

$$\eta(x) = \begin{cases} A_3, & x \in A_3; \\ \varphi A_3, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It is easy to show that this is a homomorphism; we do so presently.

Now comes the important observation: Look at the composition function $\eta \circ \mu$ whose do-

main is D_3 and whose range is \mathbb{Z}_2 :

$$\begin{aligned}(\mu \circ \eta)(\iota) &= \mu(\eta(\iota)) = \mu(A_3) = 0; \\(\mu \circ \eta)(\rho) &= \mu(\eta(\rho)) = \mu(A_3) = 0; \\(\mu \circ \eta)(\rho^2) &= \mu(\eta(\rho^2)) = \mu(A_3) = 0; \\(\mu \circ \eta)(\varphi) &= \mu(\eta(\varphi)) = \mu(\varphi A_3) = 1; \\(\mu \circ \eta)(\rho\varphi) &= \mu(\eta(\rho\varphi)) = \mu(\varphi A_3) = 1; \\(\mu \circ \eta)(\rho^2\varphi) &= \mu(\eta(\rho^2\varphi)) = \mu(\varphi A_3) = 1.\end{aligned}$$

We have

$$(\mu \circ \eta)(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \in A_3; \\ 1, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

or in other words

$$\mu \circ \eta = f.$$

In words, f is the composition of a “natural” mapping between D_3 and D_3/A_3 , and the isomorphism from D_3/A_3 to \mathbb{Z}_2 . But another way of looking at this is that the isomorphism μ is related to f and the “natural” homomorphism.

The Isomorphism Theorem

This remarkable correspondence can make it easier to study quotient groups G/A :

- find a group H that is “easy” to work with; and
- find a homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$ such that
 - $f(g) = e_H$ for all $g \in A$, and
 - $f(g) \neq e_H$ for all $g \notin A$.

If we can do this, then $H \cong G/A$, and as we saw in Section 4.2 studying G/A is equivalent to studying H .

The reverse is also true: suppose that a group G and its quotient groups are relatively easy to study, whereas another group H is difficult. The isomorphism theorem helps us identify a quotient group G/A that is isomorphic to H , making it easier to study.

Another advantage, which we realize later in the course, is that computation in G can be difficult or even impossible, while computation in G/A can be quite easy. This turns out to be the case with \mathbb{Z} when the coefficients grow too large; we will work in \mathbb{Z}_p for several values of p , and reconstruct the correct answers.

We need to formalize this observation in a theorem, but first we have to confirm something that we claimed earlier:

Lemma 4.43. Let G be a group and $A \triangleleft G$. The function $\eta : G \rightarrow G/A$ by

$$\eta(g) = gA$$

is a homomorphism.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 4.46.

□

Definition 4.44. We call the homomorphism η of Lemma 4.43 the **natural homomorphism** from G to G/A .

What's special about A_3 in the example that began this section? Of course, A_3 is a normal subgroup of D_3 , but something you might not have noticed is that it was the kernel of f . We use this to formalize the observation of Example 4.42.

Theorem 4.45 (The Isomorphism Theorem). Let G and H be groups, $f : G \rightarrow H$ a homomorphism that is onto, and $\ker f = A$. Then $G/A \cong H$, and the isomorphism $\mu : G/A \rightarrow H$ satisfies $f = \mu \circ \eta$, where $\eta : G \rightarrow G/A$ is the natural homomorphism.

We can illustrate Theorem 4.45 by the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \xrightarrow{f} & H \\ & \searrow \eta \quad \nearrow \mu & \\ & G/A & \end{array}$$

The idea is that “the diagram commutes”, or $f = \mu \circ \eta$.

Proof. We are given G, H, f and A . Define $\mu : G/A \rightarrow H$ in the following way:

$$\mu(X) = f(g), \text{ where } X = gA.$$

We claim that μ is an isomorphism from G/A to H , and moreover that $f = \mu \circ \eta$.

Since the domain of μ consists of cosets which may have different representations, we must show first that μ is well-defined. Suppose that $X \in G/A$ has two representations $X = gA = g'A$ where $g, g' \in G$ and $g \neq g'$. We need to show that $\mu(gA) = \mu(g'A)$. From Lemma 3.28(CE3), we know that $g^{-1}g' \in A$, so there exists $a \in A$ such that $g^{-1}g' = a$, so $g' = ga$. Applying the definition of μ and the homomorphism property,

$$\mu(g'A) = f(g') = f(ga) = f(g)f(a).$$

Recall that $a \in A = \ker f$, so $f(a) = e_H$. Substitution gives

$$\mu(g'A) = f(g) \cdot e_H = f(g) = \mu(gA).$$

Hence $\mu(g'A) = \mu(gA)$ and $\mu(X)$ is well-defined.

Is μ a homomorphism? Let $X, Y \in G/A$; we can represent $X = gA$ and $Y = g'A$ for some $g, g' \in G$. We see that

$$\begin{aligned} \mu(XY) &= \mu((gA)(g'A)) && \text{(substitution)} \\ &= \mu((gg')A) && \text{(coset multiplication)} \\ &= f(gg') && \text{(definition of } \mu) \\ &= f(g)f(g') && \text{(homomorphism)} \\ &= \mu(gA)\mu(g'A). && \text{(definition of } \mu) \end{aligned}$$

Thus μ is a homomorphism.

Is μ one-to-one? Let $X, Y \in G/A$ and assume that $\mu(X) = \mu(Y)$. Represent $X = gA$ and $Y = g'A$ for some $g, g' \in G$; we see that

$$\begin{aligned}
 f(g^{-1}g') &= f(g^{-1})f(g') && \text{(homomorphism)} \\
 &= f(g)^{-1}f(g') && \text{(homomorphism)} \\
 &= \mu(gA)^{-1}\mu(g'A) && \text{(definition of } \mu) \\
 &= \mu(X)^{-1}\mu(Y) && \text{(substitution)} \\
 &= \mu(Y)^{-1}\mu(Y) && \text{(substitution)} \\
 &= e_H, && \text{(inverses)}
 \end{aligned}$$

so $g^{-1}g' \in \ker f$. By hypothesis, $\ker f = A$, so $g^{-1}g' \in A$. Lemma 3.28(CE3) now tells us that $gA = g'A$, so $X = Y$. Thus μ is one-to-one.

Is μ onto? Let $h \in H$; we need to find an element $X \in G/A$ such that $\mu(X) = h$. By hypothesis, f is onto, so there exists $g \in G$ such that $f(g) = h$. By definition of μ and substitution,

$$\mu(gA) = f(g) = h,$$

so μ is onto.

We have shown that μ is an isomorphism; we still have to show that $f = \mu \circ \eta$, but the definition of μ makes this trivial: for any $g \in G$,

$$(\mu \circ \eta)(g) = \mu(\eta(g)) = \mu(gA) = f(g).$$

□

Exercises

Exercise 4.46. Prove Lemma 4.43.

Exercise 4.47. Recall the normal subgroup L of \mathbb{R}^2 from Exercises 3.16, 3.33, and 3.66 on pages 84, 89, and 99, respectively. In Exercise 4.22 on page 115 you found an explicit isomorphism $L \cong \mathbb{R}$.

- (a) Use the Isomorphism Theorem to find an isomorphism $\mathbb{R}^2/L \cong \mathbb{R}$.
- (b) Argue from this that $\mathbb{R}^2/\mathbb{R} \cong \mathbb{R}$.
- (c) Describe geometrically how the cosets of \mathbb{R}^2/L are mapped to elements of \mathbb{R} .

Exercise 4.48. Recall the normal subgroup $\langle -1 \rangle$ of Q_8 from Exercises 2.84 on page 79 and 3.62 on page 97.

- (a) Use Lagrange's Theorem to explain why $Q_8/\langle -1 \rangle$ has order 4.
- (b) We know from Exercise 2.32 on page 52 that there are only two groups of order 4, the Klein 4-group and the cyclic group of order 4, which we can represent by \mathbb{Z}_4 . Use the Isomorphism Theorem to determine which of these groups is isomorphic to $Q_8/\langle -1 \rangle$.

Exercise 4.49. Recall the kernel of a monoid homomorphism from Exercise 1.92 on page 36, and that group homomorphisms are also monoid homomorphisms. These two definitions do not look the same, but in fact, one generalizes the other.

Let G and H be groups, and $A \triangleleft G$.

Claim: If $G/A \cong H$, then there exists a homomorphism $\varphi : G \rightarrow H$ such that $\ker \varphi = A$.

1. Assume _____.
2. By hypothesis, there exists f _____.
3. Let $\eta : G \rightarrow G/A$ be the natural homomorphism. Define $\varphi : G \rightarrow H$ by $\varphi(g) =$ _____.
4. By _____, φ is a homomorphism.
5. We claim that $A \subseteq \ker \varphi$. To see why,
 - (a) By _____, the identity of G/A is A .
 - (b) By _____, $f(A) = e_H$.
 - (c) Let $a \in A$. By definition of the natural homomorphism, $\eta(a) =$ _____.
 - (d) By _____, $f(\eta(a)) = e_H$.
 - (e) By _____, $\varphi(a) = e_H$.
 - (f) Since _____, $A \subseteq \ker \varphi$.
6. We further claim that $A \supseteq \ker \varphi$. To see why,
 - (a) Let $g \in G \setminus A$. By definition of the natural homomorphism, $\varphi(g) \neq$ _____.
 - (b) By _____, $f(\eta(g)) \neq e_H$.
 - (c) By _____, $\varphi(g) \neq e_H$.
 - (d) By _____, $g \notin \ker \varphi$.
 - (e) Since g was arbitrary in $G \setminus A$, _____.
7. We have shown that $A \subseteq \ker \varphi$ and $A \supseteq \ker \varphi$. By _____, $A = \ker \varphi$.

Figure 4.3. Material for Exercise 4.50

- (a) Show that if $x \in G$ is in the kernel of a group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$ if and only if $(x, e) \in \ker f$ when we view f as a monoid homomorphism.
- (b) Show that $x \in G$ is in the kernel of a group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow H$ if and only if we can find $y, z \in G$ such that $f(y) = f(z)$ and $y^{-1}z = x$.
- (c) Explain how this shows that Exercise 1.92 “lays the groundwork” for a “monoid generalization” of the Isomorphism Theorem.
- (d) Formulate and prove a “Monoid Isomorphism Theorem.”

Exercise 4.50. Fill in each blank of Figure 4.3 with the appropriate justification or statement.

4.4: Automorphisms and groups of automorphisms

In this section, we use isomorphisms to build a new kind of group, useful for analyzing roots of polynomial equations. We will discuss the applications of these groups in Chapter 9, but they are of independent interest, as well.

Definition 4.51. Let G be a group. If $f : G \rightarrow G$ is an isomorphism, then we call f an **automorphism**.

An automorphism¹⁷ is an isomorphism whose domain and range are the same set. Thus, to show that some function f is an automorphism, you must show first that the domain and the range of

¹⁷The word comes from Greek words that mean *self* and *shape*.

f are the same set. Afterwards, you show that f satisfies the homomorphism property, and then that it is both one-to-one and onto.

Example 4.52.

- (a) An easy automorphism for any group G is the identity isomorphism $\iota(g) = g$:
- its range is by definition G ;
 - it is a *homomorphism* because $\iota(g \cdot g') = g \cdot g' = \iota(g) \cdot \iota(g')$;
 - it is *one-to-one* because $\iota(g) = \iota(g')$ implies (by evaluation of the function) that $g = g'$; and
 - it is *onto* because for any $g \in G$ we have $\iota(g) = g$.
- (b) An automorphism in $(\mathbb{Z}, +)$ is $f(x) = -x$:
- its range is \mathbb{Z} because of closure;
 - it is a *homomorphism* because $f(x + y) = -(x + y) = -x - y = f(x) + f(y)$;
 - it is *one-to-one* because $f(x) = f(y)$ implies that $-x = -y$, so $x = y$; and
 - it is *onto* because for any $x \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have $f(-x) = x$.
- (c) An automorphism in D_3 is $f(x) = \rho^2 x \rho$:
- its range is D_3 because of closure;
 - it is a *homomorphism* because $f(xy) = \rho^2(xy)\rho = \rho^2(x \cdot \iota(y))\rho = \rho^2(x \cdot \rho^3 \cdot y)\rho = (\rho^2 x \rho) \cdot (\rho^2 y \rho) = f(x) \cdot f(y)$;
 - it is *one-to-one* because $f(x) = f(y)$ implies that $\rho^2 x \rho = \rho^2 y \rho$, and multiplication on the left by ρ and on the right by ρ^2 gives us $x = y$; and
 - it is *onto* because for any $y \in D_3$, choose $x = \rho y \rho^2$ and then $f(x) = \rho^2(\rho y \rho^2)\rho = (\rho^2 \rho) \cdot y \cdot (\rho^2 \rho) = \iota \cdot y \cdot \iota = y$.

The automorphism of Example 4.52(c) generalizes to an important way. Recall the conjugation of one element of a group by another, introduced in Exercise 2.37 on page 53. By fixing the second element, we can turn this into a function on a group.

Definition 4.53. Let G be a group and $a \in G$. Define the function of **conjugation by a** to be $\text{conj}_a(x) = a^{-1}xa$.

In Example 4.52(c), we had $a = \rho$ and $\text{conj}_a(x) = a^{-1}xa = \rho^2 x \rho$.

You have already worked with conjugation in previous exercises, such as showing that it can provide an alternate definition of a normal subgroup (Exercises 2.37 on page 53 and 3.65 on page 98). Beyond that, conjugating a subgroup *always* produces another subgroup:

Lemma 4.54. Let G be a group, and $a \in G$. Then conj_a is an automorphism. Moreover, for any $H < G$,

$$\{\text{conj}_a(h) : h \in H\} < G.$$

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 4.62. □

The subgroup $\{\text{conj}_a(h) : h \in H\}$ is important enough to identify by a special name.

Definition 4.55. Suppose $H < G$, and $a \in G$. We say that $\{\text{conj}_a(h) : h \in H\}$ is the **group of conjugations of H by a** , and denote it by $\text{Conj}_a(H)$.

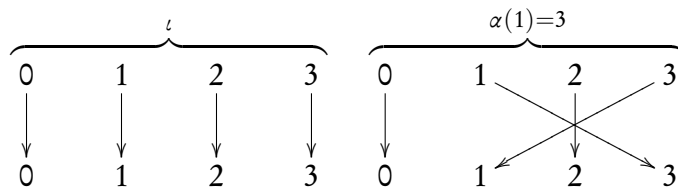


Figure 4.4. The elements of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4)$.

Conjugation of a subgroup H by an arbitrary $a \in G$ is *not* necessarily an automorphism; there can exist $H < G$ and $a \in G \setminus H$ such that $H \neq \{\text{conj}_a(b) : b \in H\}$. On the other hand, if H is a *normal* subgroup of G , then we *do* have $H = \{\text{conj}_a(b) : b \in H\}$; this property can act as an alternate definition of a normal subgroup. You will explore this in the exercises.

Now it is time to identify the new group that we promised at the beginning of the section.

The automorphism group

Notation 4.56. Write $\text{Aut}(G)$ for the set of all automorphisms of G . We typically denote elements of $\text{Aut}(G)$ by Greek letters (α, β, \dots), rather than Latin letters (f, g, \dots).

Example 4.57. We compute $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4)$. Let $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4)$ be arbitrary; what do we know about α ? By definition, its range is \mathbb{Z}_4 , and by Theorem 4.9 on page 113 we know that $\alpha(0) = 0$. Aside from that, we consider all the possibilities that preserve the isomorphism properties.

Recall from Theorem 3.83 on page 104 that \mathbb{Z}_4 is a cyclic group; in fact $\mathbb{Z}_4 = \langle 1 \rangle$. Corollary 4.12 on page 114 tells us that $\alpha(1)$ will tell us everything we want to know about α . So, what can $\alpha(1)$ be?

Case 1. Can we have $\alpha(1) = 0$? If so, then $\alpha(1) = \alpha(0)$. This is not one-to-one, so we cannot have $\alpha(1) = 0$.

Case 2. Can we have $\alpha(1) = 1$? Certainly $\alpha(1) = 1$ if α is the identity homomorphism ι , so we can have $\alpha(1) = 1$.

Case 3. Can we have $\alpha(1) = 2$? If so, then the homomorphism property implies that

$$\alpha(2) = \alpha(1 + 1) = \alpha(1) + \alpha(1) = 4 = 0 = \alpha(0).$$

This is not one-to-one, so we cannot have $\alpha(1) = 2$.

Case 4. Can we have $\alpha(1) = 3$? If so, then the homomorphism property implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha(2) &= \alpha(1 + 1) = \alpha(1) + \alpha(1) = 3 + 3 = 6 = 2; \text{ and} \\ \alpha(3) &= \alpha(2 + 1) = \alpha(2) + \alpha(1) = 2 + 3 = 5 = 1. \end{aligned}$$

In this case, α is both one-to-one *and* onto. We were careful to observe the homomorphism property when determining α , so we know that α is a homomorphism. So we *can* have $\alpha(1) = 2$.

We found only two possible elements of $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4)$: the identity automorphism and the automorphism determined by $\alpha(1) = 3$. Figure 4.4 illustrates the two mappings.

If $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4)$ were a group, then the fact that it contains only two elements would imply that $\text{Aut}(\mathbb{Z}_4) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$. But *is* it a group?

Lemma 4.58. For any group G , $\text{Aut}(G)$ is a group under the operation of composition of functions.

On account of this lemma, we can justifiably refer to $\text{Aut}(G)$ as **the automorphism group**.

Proof. Let G be any group. We show that $\text{Aut}(G)$ satisfies each of the group properties from Definition 2.1.

(closed) Let $\alpha, \theta \in \text{Aut}(G)$. We must show that $\alpha \circ \theta \in \text{Aut}(G)$ as well:

- the domain and range of $\alpha \circ \theta$ are both G because the domain and range of both α and θ are both G ;
- $\alpha \circ \theta$ is a *homomorphism* because for any $g, g' \in G$ we have,

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha \circ \theta)(g \cdot g') &= \alpha(\theta(g \cdot g')) && \text{(def. of comp.)} \\ &= \alpha(\theta(g) \cdot \theta(g')) && (\theta \text{ a homom.}) \\ &= \alpha(\theta(g)) \cdot \alpha(\theta(g')) && (\alpha \text{ a homom.}) \\ &= (\alpha \circ \theta)(g) \cdot (\alpha \circ \theta)(g'); && \text{(def. of comp.)} \end{aligned}$$

- $\alpha \circ \theta$ is *one-to-one* because
 - if $(\alpha \circ \theta)(g) = (\alpha \circ \theta)(g')$, then by the definition of composition, $\alpha(\theta(g)) = \alpha(\theta(g'))$;
 - since α is one-to-one, $\theta(g) = \theta(g')$;
 - since θ is one-to-one, $g = g'$; and
- $\alpha \circ \theta$ is *onto* because for any $z \in G$,
 - α is onto, so there exists $y \in G$ such that $\alpha(y) = z$, and
 - θ is onto, so there exists $x \in G$ such that $\theta(x) = y$, so
 - $(\alpha \circ \theta)(x) = \alpha(\theta(x)) = \alpha(y) = z$.

We have shown that $\alpha \circ \theta$ satisfies the properties of an automorphism; hence, $\alpha \circ \theta \in \text{Aut}(G)$, and $\text{Aut}(G)$ is closed under the composition of functions.

(associative) The associative property is satisfied because the operation is composition of functions, which is associative.

(identity) Denote by ι the identity homomorphism; that is, $\iota(g) = g$ for all $g \in G$. We showed in Example 4.52(a) that ι is an automorphism, so $\iota \in \text{Aut}(G)$. Let $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(G)$; we claim that $\iota \circ \alpha = \alpha \circ \iota = \alpha$. Let $x \in G$ and write $y = \alpha(x)$. We have

$$(\iota \circ \alpha)(x) = \iota(\alpha(x)) = \iota(y) = y = \alpha(x),$$

and likewise $(\alpha \circ \iota)(x) = \alpha(x)$. Since x was arbitrary in G , we have $\iota \circ \alpha = \alpha \circ \iota = \alpha$.

(inverse) Let $\alpha \in \text{Aut}(G)$. Since α is an automorphism, it is an isomorphism. You showed in Exercise 4.27 that α^{-1} is also an isomorphism. The domain and range of α are both G , so the domain and range of α^{-1} are also both G . Hence $\alpha^{-1} \in \text{Aut}(G)$.

□

Since $\text{Aut}(G)$ is a group, we can compute $\text{Aut}(\text{Aut}(G))$, and the same theory holds, so we can compute $\text{Aut}(\text{Aut}(\text{Aut}(G)))$, and so forth. In the exercises, you will compute $\text{Aut}(G)$ for some other groups.

Exercises.

Exercise 4.59. Show that $f(x) = x^2$ is an automorphism on the group (\mathbb{R}^+, \times) , but not on the group (\mathbb{R}, \times) .

Exercise 4.60. Recall the subgroup $A_3 = \{\iota, \rho, \rho^2\}$ of D_3 .

- (a) List the elements of $\text{Conj}_\rho(A_3)$.
- (b) List the elements of $\text{Conj}_\varphi(A_3)$.
- (c) In both (a) and (b), we saw that $\text{Conj}_a(A_3) = A_3$ for $a = \rho, \varphi$. This makes sense, since $A_3 \triangleleft D_3$. Find a subgroup K of D_3 and an element $a \in D_3$ where $\text{Conj}_a(K) \neq K$.

Exercise 4.61. Let $H = \langle i \rangle < Q_8$. List the elements of $\text{Conj}_j(H)$.

Exercise 4.62. Prove Lemma 4.54 on page 128 in two steps:

- (a) Show first that conj_a is an automorphism.
- (b) Show that $\{\text{conj}_a(b) : b \in H\}$ is a group.

Exercise 4.63. Determine the automorphism group of \mathbb{Z}_5 .

Exercise 4.64. Determine the automorphism group of D_3 .

Chapter 5:

Groups of permutations

This chapter introduces groups of permutations. Now, what is a permutation, and why are they so important?

Certain applications of mathematics involve the rearrangement of a list of n elements. It is common to refer to such rearrangements as *permutations*.

Definition 5.1. A **list** is a sequence. Let V be any finite list. A **permutation** is a one-to-one function whose domain and range are both V .

We require V to be a list rather than a set because for a permutation, the order of the elements matters: the lists $(a, d, k, r) \neq (a, k, d, r)$ even though $\{a, d, k, r\} = \{a, k, d, r\}$. For the sake of convenience, we usually write V as a list of natural numbers between 1 and $|V|$, but it can be any finite list.

Let's take a concrete example. Suppose you have a list of numbers, $(1, 3, 2, 7)$, and you rearrange them by switching the first two entries in the list, $(3, 1, 2, 7)$. The action of switching those first two numbers is a permutation. There is no doubt as to the outcome of the action, so this action is a function. Thus, permutations are special kinds of functions.

The importance of permutations is twofold. First, group theory is a pretty neat and useful thing in itself, and we will see in this chapter that all finite groups can be modeled by groups of permutations. Anything that can model every possible group is by that very fact important.

The second reason permutations are important has to do with the factorization of polynomials. The polynomial $x^4 - 1$ can be factored as

$$(x + 1)(x - 1)(x + i)(x - i),$$

but it can also be factored as

$$(x - 1)(x + 1)(x - i)(x + i).$$

On account of the commutative property, it doesn't matter what order we list the factors; this corresponds to a permutation, and is related to another idea that we will study, called field extensions. Field extensions can be used to solve polynomials equations, and since the order of the extensions doesn't really matter, permutations are important to determining the structure of the extension that solves a polynomial.

Section 5.1 introduces you to groups of permutations, while Section 5.2 describes a convenient way to write permutations. Sections 5.3 and 5.5 introduce you to two special classes of groups of permutation. The main goal of this chapter is to show that groups of permutations are, in some sense, "all there is" to group theory, which we accomplish in Section 5.4. We conclude with a great example of an application of symmetry groups in Section 5.6.

5.1: Permutations

In this first section, we consider some basic properties of permutations.

Permutations as functions

Example 5.2. Let $S = (a, d, k, r)$. Define a permutation on the elements of S by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} r, & x = a; \\ a, & x = d; \\ k, & x = k; \\ d, & x = r. \end{cases}$$

Notice that f is one-to-one, and $f(S) = (r, a, k, d)$.

We can represent the same permutation on $V = (1, 2, 3, 4)$, a generic list of four elements. Define a permutation on the elements of V by

$$\pi(i) = \begin{cases} 2, & i = 1; \\ 4, & i = 2; \\ 3, & i = 3; \\ 1, & i = 4. \end{cases}$$

Here π is one-to-one, and $\pi(i) = j$ is interpreted as “the j th element of the permuted list is the i th element of the original list.” You could visualize this as

position i in original list		position j in permuted list
1	→	2
2	→	4
3	→	3
4	→	1

Thus $\pi(V) = (4, 1, 3, 2)$. If you look back at $f(S)$, you will see that in fact the first element of the permuted list, $f(S)$, is the fourth element of the original list, S .

It should not surprise you that the identity function is a “do-nothing” permutation, just as it was a “do-nothing” symmetry of the triangle in Section 2.2.

Proposition 5.3. Let V be a set of n elements. The function $\iota : V \rightarrow V$ by $\iota(x) = x$ is a permutation on V . In addition, for any $\alpha \in S_n$, $\iota \circ \alpha = \alpha$ and $\alpha \circ \iota = \alpha$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 5.13. □

Permutations have a convenient property.

Lemma 5.4. The composition of two permutations is a permutation.

Proof. Let V be a set of n elements, and α, β permutations of V . Let $\gamma = \alpha \circ \beta$. We claim that γ is a permutation. To show this, we must show that γ is a one-to-one function whose domain and range are both V . The definition of α and β imply that the domain and range of γ are both V ;

it remains to show that γ is one-to-one. Let $x, y \in V$ and assume that $\gamma(x) = \gamma(y)$; substituting the definition of γ ,

$$\alpha(\beta(x)) = \alpha(\beta(y)).$$

Because they are permutations, α and β are one-to-one functions. Since α is one-to-one, we can simplify the above equation to

$$\beta(x) = \beta(y);$$

and since β is one-to-one, we can simplify the above equation to

$$x = y.$$

We assumed that $\gamma(x) = \gamma(y)$, and found that this forced $x = y$. By definition, γ is a one-to-one function. We already explained why its domain and range are both V , so γ is a permutation. \square

In Example 5.2, we wrote a permutation as a piecewise function. This is burdensome; we would like a more efficient way to denote permutations.

Notation 5.5. The **tabular notation** for a permutation on a list of n elements is a $2 \times n$ matrix

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & \cdots & n \\ \alpha_1 & \alpha_2 & \cdots & \alpha_n \end{pmatrix}$$

indicating that $\alpha(1) = \alpha_1, \alpha(2) = \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha(n) = \alpha_n$. Again, $\alpha(i) = j$ indicates that the j th element of the permuted list is the i th element of the original list.

Example 5.6. Recall V and π from Example 5.2. In tabular notation,

$$\pi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

because π moves

- the element in the first position to the second;
- the element in the second position to the fourth;
- the element in the third position nowhere; and
- the element in the fourth position to the first.

Then

$$\pi(1, 2, 3, 4) = (4, 1, 3, 2).$$

Notice that the tabular notation for π looks similar to the table in Example 5.2.

We can also use π to permute different lists, so long as the new lists have four elements:

$$\pi(3, 2, 1, 4) = (4, 3, 1, 2);$$

$$\pi(2, 4, 3, 1) = (1, 2, 3, 4);$$

$$\pi(a, b, c, d) = (d, a, c, b).$$

Groups of permutations

It comes as a pleasant revelation that sets of permutations form groups in a very natural way. In particular, consider the following set.

Definition 5.7. For $n \geq 2$, denote by S_n the set of all permutations of a list of n elements.

Example 5.8. For $n = 1, 2, 3$ we have

$$\begin{aligned} S_1 &= \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \\ S_2 &= \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \right\} \\ S_3 &= \left\{ \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \right\}. \end{aligned}$$

Is there some structure to S_n ? By definition, a permutation is a one-to-one function. In Example 1.58 on page 26, we found that for any set, the set of functions on that set was a monoid under the operation of composition of functions. The identity function is one-to-one, and the composition of one-to-one functions is also one-to-one, so S_n has an identity and is closed under composition. In addition, S_n inherits the associative property from the larger set of functions. Already, then, we can conclude that S_n is a monoid. However, one-to-one functions have inverses, which leads us to ask whether S_n is also a group.

Theorem 5.9. For all $n \geq 2$ (S_n, \circ) is a group.

Notation 5.10. Normally we just write S_n , understanding from context that the operation is composition of functions. It is common to refer to S_n as the **symmetric group** of n elements.

Proof. Let $n \geq 2$. We have to show that S_n satisfies the properties of a group under the operation of composition of functions. Proposition 5.3 tells us that the identity function acts as an identity in S_n , and Lemma 5.4 tells us that S_n is closed under composition.

We still have to show that S_n satisfies the inverse and associative properties. Let V be a finite list with n elements. The fact that $S_n \subseteq F_V$ implies that S_n satisfies the associative property. Let $\alpha \in S_n$. By definition of a permutation, α is one-to-one; since V is finite, α is onto. By Exercise 1.33 on page 14, α has an inverse function α^{-1} , which satisfies the relationship that, for every $v \in V$,

$$\alpha^{-1}(\alpha(v)) = v \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha(\alpha^{-1}(v)) = v.$$

Since $\iota(v) = v$ for every $v \in V$, we have shown that $\alpha^{-1} \circ \alpha = \alpha \circ \alpha^{-1} = \iota$. Again, Exercise 1.33 indicates that α^{-1} is a one-to-one, onto function on V , so $\alpha^{-1} \in S_n$! We chose α as an arbitrary permutation of n elements, so S_n satisfies the inverse property.

As claimed, S_n satisfies all four properties of a group. □

A final question: *how large is each S_n ?* To answer this, we must count the number of permutations of n elements. A counting argument called *the multiplication principle* shows that there are

$$n! = n \cdot (n-1) \cdot (n-2) \cdots 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$$

such permutations. Why? Given any list of n elements,

- we have n positions to move the first element, including its current position;
- we have $n - 1$ positions to move the second element, since the first element has already taken one spot;
- we have $n - 2$ positions to move the third element, since the first and second elements have already take two spots;
- etc.

We have shown the following.

Lemma 5.11. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$, $|S_n| = n!$

Exercises

Exercise 5.12. For the permutation

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 5 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix},$$

- Evaluate $\alpha(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6)$.
- Evaluate $\alpha(1, 5, 2, 4, 6, 3)$.
- Evaluate $\alpha(6, 3, 5, 2, 1, 4)$.

Exercise 5.13. Prove Proposition 5.3.

Exercise 5.14. How many elements are there of S_4 ?

Exercise 5.15. Identify at least one normal of S_3 subgroup, and at least one subgroup that is not normal.

Exercise 5.16. Find an explicit isomorphism from S_2 to \mathbb{Z}_2 .

Exercise 5.17. Do you think $S_3 \cong \mathbb{Z}_6$, $S_3 \cong D_3$, or neither? Why or why not? (Do not provide a full proof; a short justification will do.)

5.2: Cycle notation

Tabular notation of permutations is rather burdensome; a simpler notation is possible.

Cycles

Definition 5.18. A **cycle** is a vector

$$\alpha = (\alpha_1 \alpha_2 \cdots \alpha_n)$$

that corresponds to the permutation where the entry in position α_1 is moved to position α_2 ; the entry in position α_2 is moved to position α_3 , \dots and the element in position α_n is moved to position α_1 . If a position is not listed in α , then the entry in that position is not moved. We call such positions **stationary**. For the identity permutation where no entry is moved, we write

$$\iota = (1).$$

The fact that the permutation α moves the entry in position α_n to position α_1 is the reason this is called a *cycle*; applying it repeatedly cycles the list of elements around, and on the n th application the list returns to its original order.

Example 5.19. Recall π from Example 5.6. In tabular notation,

$$\pi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

To write it as a cycle, we can start with any position we like. However, the convention is to start with the smallest position that changes. Since π moves elements out of position 1, we start with

$$\pi = (1 ?).$$

The second entry in cycle notation tells us where π moves the element whose position is that of the first entry. The first entry indicates position 1. From the tabular notation, we see that π moves the element in position 1 to position 2, so

$$\pi = (1 \ 2 ?).$$

The third entry of cycle notation tells us where π moves the element whose position is that of the second entry. The second entry indicates position 2. From the tabular notation, we see that π moves the element in position 2 to position 4, so

$$\pi = (1 \ 2 \ 4 ?).$$

The fourth entry of cycle notation tells us where π moves the element whose position is that of the third entry. The third element indicates position 4. From the tabular notation, we see that π moves the element in position 4 to position 1, so you might feel the temptation to write

$$\pi = (1 \ 2 \ 4 \ 1 ?),$$

but there is no need. Since we have now returned to the first element in the cycle, we close it:

$$\pi = (1 \ 2 \ 4).$$

The cycle $(1 \ 2 \ 4)$, indicates that

- the element in position 1 of a list moves to position 2;
- the element in position 2 of a list moves to position 4;
- the element in position 4 of a list moves to position 1.

What about the element in position 3? Since it doesn't appear in the cycle notation, it must be stationary. This agrees with what we wrote in the piecewise and tabular notations for π .

Not all permutations can be written as one cycle.

Example 5.20. Consider the permutation in tabular notation

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We can easily start the cycle with $\alpha = (1\ 2)$, and this captures the behavior on the elements in the first and second positions of a list, but what about the third and fourth positions? We cannot write $(1\ 2\ 3\ 4)$; that would imply that the element in the second position is moved to the third, and the element in the fourth position is moved to the fourth.

To solve this difficulty, we develop a simple arithmetic of cycles.

Cycle arithmetic

What operation should we apply to cycles? Cycles represent permutations; permutations are functions; functions can be *composed*. Hence, the appropriate operation is *composition*.

Example 5.21. Consider the cycles

$$\beta = (2\ 3\ 4) \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma = (1\ 2\ 4).$$

What is the cycle notation for

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (2\ 3\ 4) \circ (1\ 2\ 4)?$$

Let's think about this. Since cycles represent permutations, and permutations are closed under composition, $\beta \circ \gamma$ must be a permutation. With any luck, it will be a permutation that we can write as a cycle. What we need to do, then, is determine how the permutation $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves a list of four elements around. If that permutation can be represented as a cycle, then we've answered the question.

Since an element in the first position is moved, we should be able to write

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (1\ ?).$$

Where is this first element moved? Let's apply the definition of composition: $\beta \circ \gamma$ means, "first apply γ ; then apply β ." Figure 5.1 gives us the basic idea; we will refer to it throughout the example. Since γ moves an element in the first position to the second, and β moves an element in the second position to the third, it must be that $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves an element from the first position to the third. We see this in the top row of Figure 5.1. We now know that

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (1\ 3\ ?).$$

The next entry should tell us where $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves an element that starts in the third position. Applying the definition of composition again, we know that γ moves an element from the third

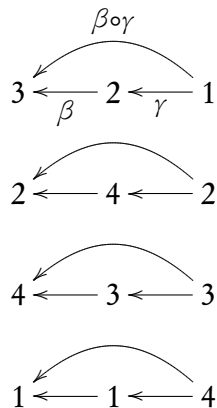


Figure 5.1. Diagram of how $\beta \circ \gamma$ modifies a list of four elements, for $\beta = (2\ 3\ 4)$ and $\gamma = (1\ 2\ 4)$.

position to... well, nowhere, actually. So an element in the third position *doesn't* move under γ ; if we then apply β , however, it moves to the fourth position. It must be that $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves an element from the third position to the fourth. We see this in the *third* row of Figure 5.1. We now know that

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (1\ 3\ 4\ ?).$$

Time to look at elements in the fourth position, then. Since γ moves elements in the fourth position to the first position (4 is at the end of the cycle, so it moves to the beginning), and β moves elements in the first position... well, nowhere, we conclude that $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves elements from the fourth position to the first position. This completes the cycle, so we now know that

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (1\ 3\ 4).$$

Haven't we missed something? What about an element that starts in the second position? Since γ moves elements in the second position to the fourth, and β moves elements from the fourth position to the second, they undo each other, and the second position is stationary. It is, therefore, *absolutely correct* that 2 does not appear in the cycle notation of $\beta \circ \gamma$, and we see this in the *second* row of Figure 5.1.

Another phenomenon occurs when each permutation moves elements that the other does not.

Example 5.22. Consider the two cycles

$$\beta = (1\ 3) \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma = (2\ 4).$$

There is no way to simplify $\beta \circ \gamma$ into a *single* cycle, because β operates only on the first and third elements of a list, and γ operates only on the second and fourth elements of a list. The only way to write them is as the composition of two cycles,

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (1\ 3) \circ (2\ 4).$$

This motivates the following.

Definition 5.23. We say that two cycles are **disjoint** if none of their entries are common.

Disjoint cycles enjoy an important property: their permutations commute under composition.

Lemma 5.24. Let α, β be two disjoint cycles. Then $\alpha \circ \beta = \beta \circ \alpha$.

Proof. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ be the largest entry in α or β . Let $V = (1, 2, \dots, n)$. Let $i \in V$. We consider the following cases:

Case 1. $\alpha(i) \neq i$.

Let $j = \alpha(i)$. The definition of cycle notation implies that j appears immediately after i in the cycle α . The definition of “disjoint” means that, since i and j are entries of α , they cannot be entries of β . By definition of cycle notation, $\beta(i) = i$ and $\beta(j) = j$. Hence

$$(\alpha \circ \beta)(i) = \alpha(\beta(i)) = \alpha(i) = j = \beta(j) = \beta(\alpha(i)) = (\beta \circ \alpha)(i).$$

Case 2. $\alpha(i) = i$.

Subcase (a): $\beta(i) = i$.

We have $(\alpha \circ \beta)(i) = i = (\beta \circ \alpha)(i)$.

Subcase (b): $\beta(i) \neq i$.

Let $j = \beta(i)$. The definition of cycle notation implies that j appears immediately after i in the cycle β . The definition of “disjoint” means that, since i and j are entries of β , they cannot be entries of α . By definition of cycle notation, $\alpha(j) = j$. Hence

$$(\alpha \circ \beta)(i) = \alpha(\beta(i)) = \alpha(j) = j = \beta(i) = \beta(\alpha(i)) = (\beta \circ \alpha)(i).$$

In both cases, we had $(\alpha \circ \beta)(i) = (\beta \circ \alpha)(i)$. Since i was arbitrary, $\alpha \circ \beta = \beta \circ \alpha$. □

Notation 5.25. Since the composition of two disjoint cycles $\alpha \circ \beta$ cannot be simplified, we normally write it without the circle; for example,

$$(1\ 2)(3\ 4).$$

By Lemma 5.24, we can also write this as

$$(3\ 4)(1\ 2).$$

That said, the usual convention for cycles is to write the smallest entry of a cycle first, and to write cycles with smaller first entries before cycles with larger first entries. Thus, we prefer

$$(1\ 4)(2\ 3)$$

to either of

$$(1\ 4)(3\ 2) \quad \text{or} \quad (2\ 3)(1\ 4).$$

The convention for writing a permutation in cycle form is the following:

1. The first entry in each cycle is the cycle’s smallest.
2. We simplify the composition of cycles that are not disjoint, discarding all cycles of length 1.

3. The remaining cycles will be disjoint. From Lemma 5.24, we know that they commute; write them so that the first cycle's first entry is smallest, the second cycle's first entry is second-smallest, and so forth.

Example 5.26. We return to Example 5.20, with

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

To write this permutation in cycle notation, we begin again with

$$\alpha = (1\ 2) \dots ?$$

Since α also moves entries in positions 3 and 4, we need to add a second cycle. We start with the smallest position whose entry changes position, 3:

$$\alpha = (1\ 2)(3\ ?).$$

Since α moves the element in position 3 to position 4, we write

$$\alpha = (1\ 2)(3\ 4\ ?).$$

Now α moves the element in position 4 to position 3, so we can close the second cycle:

$$\alpha = (1\ 2)(3\ 4).$$

Now α moves no more entries, so the cycle notation is complete.

Permutations as cycles

We have come to the main result of this section.

Theorem 5.27. Every permutation can be written as a composition of cycles.

The proof is constructive; we build the cycle notation for the permutation.

Proof. Let π be a permutation; denote its domain by V . Without loss of generality, we write $V = (1, 2, \dots, n)$.

Let i_1 be the smallest element of V such that $\pi(i_1) \neq i_1$. Recall that the range of π has at most n elements, so the sequence $\pi(i_1), \pi(\pi(i_1)) = \pi^2(i_1), \dots$ cannot continue indefinitely; eventually, we must have $\pi^{k+1}(i_1) = i_1$ for some $k \leq n$. Let

$$\alpha^{(1)} = (i_1\ \pi(i_1)\ \pi(\pi(i_1)) \cdots \pi^k(i_1)).$$

Is there some $i_2 \in V$ that is not stationary with respect to π and not an entry of $\alpha^{(1)}$? If so, then generate the cycle $\alpha^{(2)}$ by $(i_2\ \pi(i_2)\ \pi(\pi(i_2)) \cdots \pi^\ell(i_2))$, where, as before $\pi^{\ell+1}(i_2) = i_2$.

Repeat this process until every non-stationary element of V corresponds to a cycle, generating $\alpha^{(3)}, \dots, \alpha^{(m)}$ for non-stationary $i_3 \notin \alpha^{(1)}, \alpha^{(2)}, i_4 \notin \alpha^{(1)}, \alpha^{(2)}, \alpha^{(3)}$, and so on until

$i_m \notin \alpha^{(1)}, \dots, \alpha^{(m-1)}$. Since the list is finite, this process will not continue indefinitely, and we have a finite list of cycles.

The remainder of the proof consists of two claims.

Claim 1: Each of the cycles we created is disjoint from any of the rest.

By way of contradiction, assume that two cycles $\alpha^{(i)}$ and $\alpha^{(j)}$ are not disjoint. By construction, the first elements of these cycles are different; let r be the first entry in $\alpha^{(j)}$ that also appears in $\alpha^{(i)}$. Let a be the entry that precedes r in $\alpha^{(i)}$, and b the entry that precedes r in $\alpha^{(j)}$. By construction, we have $\alpha(a) = r = \alpha(b)$. Since r is the *first* entry of each cycle that is the same, $a \neq b$. This contradicts the hypothesis that α is a permutation, as permutations are one-to-one. Hence, $\alpha^{(i)}$ and $\alpha^{(j)}$ are disjoint.

Claim 2: $\pi = \alpha^{(1)}\alpha^{(2)}\dots\alpha^{(m)}$.

Let $i \in V$. We consider two cases.

If $\pi(i) = i$, then i could not have been used to begin construction of an $\alpha^{(j)}$. Since π is a one-to-one function, we cannot have $\pi(k) = i$ for any $k \neq i$, either. By construction, i appears in none of the $\alpha^{(j)}$.

Assume, then, that $\pi(i) \neq i$. By construction, i appears in $\alpha^{(j)}$ for some $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$. By definition, $\alpha^{(j)}(i) = \pi(i)$, so $\alpha^{(k)}(i) = i$ for $k \neq j$. By Claim 1, both i and $\pi(i)$ appear in *only* one of the α . By substitution, the expression $(\alpha^{(1)}\alpha^{(2)}\dots\alpha^{(m)})(i)$ simplifies to

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha^{(1)}\alpha^{(2)}\dots\alpha^{(m)})(i) &= \alpha^{(1)}(\alpha^{(2)}(\dots\alpha^{(m-1)}(\alpha^{(m)}(i)))) \\ &= \alpha^{(1)}(\alpha^{(2)}(\dots\alpha^{(j-1)}(\alpha^{(j)}(i)))) \\ &= \alpha^{(1)}(\alpha^{(2)}(\dots\alpha^{(j-1)}(\pi(i)))) \\ &= \pi(i). \end{aligned}$$

We have shown that

$$(\alpha^{(1)}\alpha^{(2)}\dots\alpha^{(m)})(i) = \pi(i).$$

Since i is arbitrary, $\pi = \alpha^{(1)} \circ \alpha^{(2)} \circ \dots \circ \alpha^{(m)}$. That is, π is a composition of cycles. Since π was arbitrary, every permutation is a composition of cycles. \square

Example 5.28. Consider the following permutation written in tabular notation,

$$\pi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 \\ 7 & 5 & 3 & 2 & 4 & 8 & 1 & 6 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The proof of Theorem 5.27 constructs the cycles

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha^{(1)} &= (1\ 7) \\ \alpha^{(2)} &= (2\ 5\ 4) \\ \alpha^{(3)} &= (6\ 8). \end{aligned}$$

Notice that $\alpha^{(1)}$, $\alpha^{(2)}$, and $\alpha^{(3)}$ are disjoint. In addition, the only element of $V = (1, 2, \dots, 8)$ that does not appear in an α is 3, because $\pi(3) = 3$. Inspection verifies that

$$\pi = \alpha^{(1)}\alpha^{(2)}\alpha^{(3)}.$$

We conclude with some examples of simplifying the composition of permutations.

Example 5.29. Let $\alpha = (1\ 3)(2\ 4)$ and $\beta = (1\ 3\ 2\ 4)$. Notice that $\alpha \neq \beta$; check this on $V = (1, 2, 3, 4)$ if this isn't clear. In addition, α and β are not disjoint.

1. We compute the cycle notation for $\gamma = \alpha \circ \beta$. We start with the smallest entry moved by either α or β :

$$\gamma = (1\ ?).$$

The notation $\alpha \circ \beta$ means to apply β first, *then* α . What does β do with the entry in position 1? It moves it to position 3. Subsequently, α moves the entry in position 3 back to the entry in position 1. The next entry in the first cycle of γ should thus be 1, but that's also the first entry in the cycle, so we close the cycle. So far, we have

$$\gamma = (1) \dots ?$$

We aren't finished, since α and β also move other entries around. The next smallest entry moved by either α or β is 2, so

$$\gamma = (1)(2\ ?).$$

Now β moves the entry in position 2 to the entry in position 4, and α moves the entry in position 4 to the entry in position 2. The next entry in the second cycle of γ should thus be 2, but that's also the first entry in the second cycle, so we close the cycle. So far, we have

$$\gamma = (1)(2) \dots ?$$

Next, β moves the entry in position 3, so

$$\gamma = (1)(2)(3\ ?).$$

Where does β move the entry in position 3? To the entry in position 2. Subsequently, α moves the entry in position 2 to the entry in position 4. We now have

$$\gamma = (1)(2)(3\ 4\ ?).$$

You can probably guess that 4, as the largest possible entry, will close the cycle, but to be safe we'll check: β moves the entry in position 4 to the entry in position 1, and α moves the entry in position 1 to the entry in position 3. The next entry of the third cycle will be 3, but this is also the first entry of the third cycle, so we close the third cycle and

$$\gamma = (1)(2)(3\ 4).$$

Finally, we simplify γ by not writing cycles of length 1, so

$$\gamma = (3\ 4).$$

Hence

$$((1\ 3)(2\ 4)) \circ (1\ 3\ 2\ 4) = (3\ 4).$$

2. Now we compute the cycle notation for $\beta \circ \alpha$, but with less detail. Again we start with 1,

which α moves to 3, and β then moves to 2. So we start with

$$\beta \circ \alpha = (1\ 2\ ?).$$

Next, α moves 2 to 4, and β moves 4 to 1. This closes the first cycle:

$$\beta \circ \alpha = (1\ 2) \dots ?$$

We start the next cycle with position 3: α moves it to position 1, which β moves back to position 3. This generates a length-one cycle, so there is no need to add anything. Likewise, the element in position 4 is also stable under $\beta \circ \alpha$. Hence we need write no more cycles;

$$\beta \circ \alpha = (1\ 2).$$

3. Let's look also at $\beta \circ \gamma$ where $\gamma = (1\ 4)$. We start with 1, which γ moves to 4, and then β moves to 1. Since $\beta \circ \gamma$ moves 1 to itself, we don't have to write 1 in the cycle. The next smallest number that appears is 2: γ doesn't move it, and β moves 2 to 4. We start with

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (2\ 4\ ?).$$

Next, γ moves 4 to 1, and β moves 1 to 3. This adds another element to the cycle:

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (2\ 4\ 3\ ?).$$

We already know that 1 won't appear in the cycle, so you might guess that we should not close the cycle. To be certain, we consider what $\beta \circ \gamma$ does to 3: γ doesn't move it, and β moves 3 to 2. The cycle is now complete:

$$\beta \circ \gamma = (2\ 4\ 3).$$

Exercises.

Exercise 5.30. For the permutation

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 5 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 3 \end{pmatrix},$$

- (a) Write α in cycle notation.
- (b) Write α as a piecewise function.

Exercise 5.31. For the permutation

$$\alpha = (1\ 3\ 4\ 2),$$

- (a) Evaluate $\alpha(1, 2, 3, 4)$.
- (b) Evaluate $\alpha(1, 4, 3, 2)$.
- (c) Evaluate $\alpha(3, 1, 4, 2)$.
- (d) Write α in tabular notation.
- (e) Write α as a piecewise function.

Exercise 5.32. Let $\alpha = (1\ 2\ 3\ 4)$, $\beta = (1\ 4\ 3\ 2)$, and $\gamma = (1\ 3)$. Compute $\alpha \circ \beta$, $\alpha \circ \gamma$, $\beta \circ \gamma$, $\beta \circ \alpha$, $\gamma \circ \alpha$, $\gamma \circ \beta$, α^2 , β^2 , and γ^2 . (Here $\alpha^2 = \alpha \circ \alpha$.) What are the inverses of α , β , and γ ?

Exercise 5.33. Compute the order of

$$\alpha = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Exercise 5.34. Show that all the elements of S_3 can be written as compositions of the cycles $\alpha = (1\ 2\ 3)$ and $\beta = (2\ 3)$.

Exercise 5.35. For α and β as defined in Exercise 5.34, show that $\beta \circ \alpha = \alpha^2 \circ \beta$. (Notice that $\alpha, \beta \in S_n$ for all $n > 2$, so as a consequence of this exercise S_n is not abelian for $n > 2$.)

Exercise 5.36. Write the Cayley table for S_3 .

Exercise 5.37. Show that $D_3 \cong S_3$ by showing that the function $f : D_3 \rightarrow S_3$ by $f(\rho^a \varphi^b) = \alpha^a \beta^b$ is an isomorphism.

Exercise 5.38. List the elements of S_4 using cycle notation.

Exercise 5.39. Compute the cyclic subgroup of S_4 generated by $\alpha = (1\ 3\ 4\ 2)$. Compare your answer to that of Exercise 5.33.

Exercise 5.40. Let $\alpha = (\alpha_1\ \alpha_2\ \cdots\ \alpha_m) \in S_n$. (Note $m < n$.) Show that we can write α^{-1} as

$$\beta = (\alpha_1\ \alpha_m\ \alpha_{m-1}\ \cdots\ \alpha_2).$$

For example, if $\alpha = (2\ 3\ 5\ 6)$, $\alpha^{-1} = (2\ 6\ 5\ 3)$.

5.3: Dihedral groups

In Section 2.2 we studied the symmetries of a triangle; we presented the group as the products of matrices ρ and φ , derived from the symmetries of *rotation* and *reflection about the y-axis*. Figure 5.2 on the next page, a copy of Figure 2.4 on page 55, shows how ρ and φ correspond to the symmetries of an equilateral triangle centered at the origin. In Exercises 5.34–5.37 you showed that D_3 and S_3 are isomorphic.

From symmetries to permutations

We now turn to the symmetries of a regular n -sided polygon.

Definition 5.41. The **dihedral set** D_n is the set of symmetries of a regular polygon with n sides.

We have two goals in introducing the dihedral group: first, to give you another concrete and interesting group; and second, to serve as a bridge to Section 5.4. The next example starts starts us in that directions.

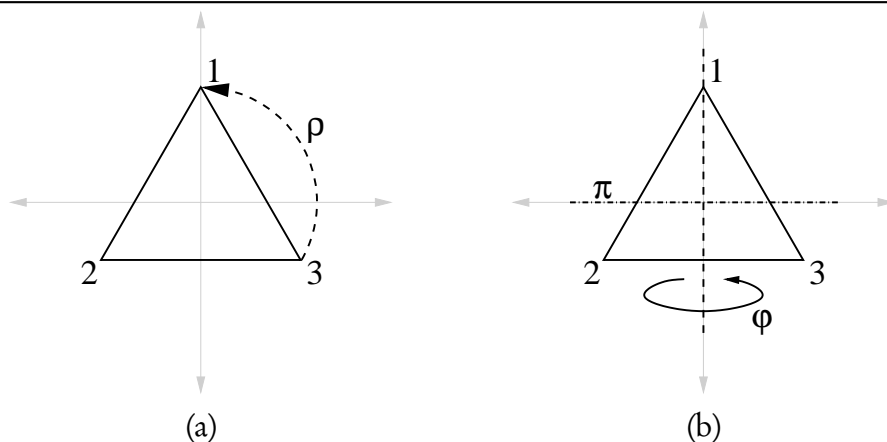


Figure 5.2. Rotation and reflection of an equilateral triangle centered at the origin

Example 5.42. Another way to represent the elements of D_3 is to consider how they re-arrange the vertices of the triangle. We can represent the vertices of a triangle as the list $V = (1, 2, 3)$. Application of ρ to the triangle moves

- vertex 1 to vertex 2;
- vertex 2 to vertex 3; and
- vertex 3 to vertex 1.

This is equivalent to the permutation $(1\ 2\ 3)$. Application of φ to the triangle moves

- vertex 1 to itself—that is, vertex 1 does not move;
- vertex 2 to vertex 3; and
- vertex 3 to vertex 2.

This is equivalent to the permutation $(2\ 3)$.

In the context of the symmetries of the triangle, it looks as if ρ and φ correspond to $(1\ 2\ 3)$ and $(2\ 3)$, respectively. Recall that ρ and φ generate all the symmetries of a triangle; likewise, these two cycles generate all the permutations of a list of three elements! (See Example 5.8 and Exercise 2.45 on page 61.)

We can do this with D_4 and S_4 as well.

Example 5.43. Using the tabular notation for permutations, we identify some elements of D_4 , the set of symmetries of a square. As with the triangle, we can represent the vertices of a square as the list $V = (1, 2, 3, 4)$. The identity symmetry ι , which moves the vertices back onto themselves, is thus the cycle (1) . We also have a 90° rotation which moves vertex 1 to vertex 2, vertex 2 to vertex 3, and so forth. As a permutation, we can write that as

$$\rho = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1\ 2\ 3\ 4).$$

The other rotations are clearly powers of ρ . We can visualize three kinds of flips: one across the y -axis,

$$\varphi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = (1\ 2)(3\ 4);$$

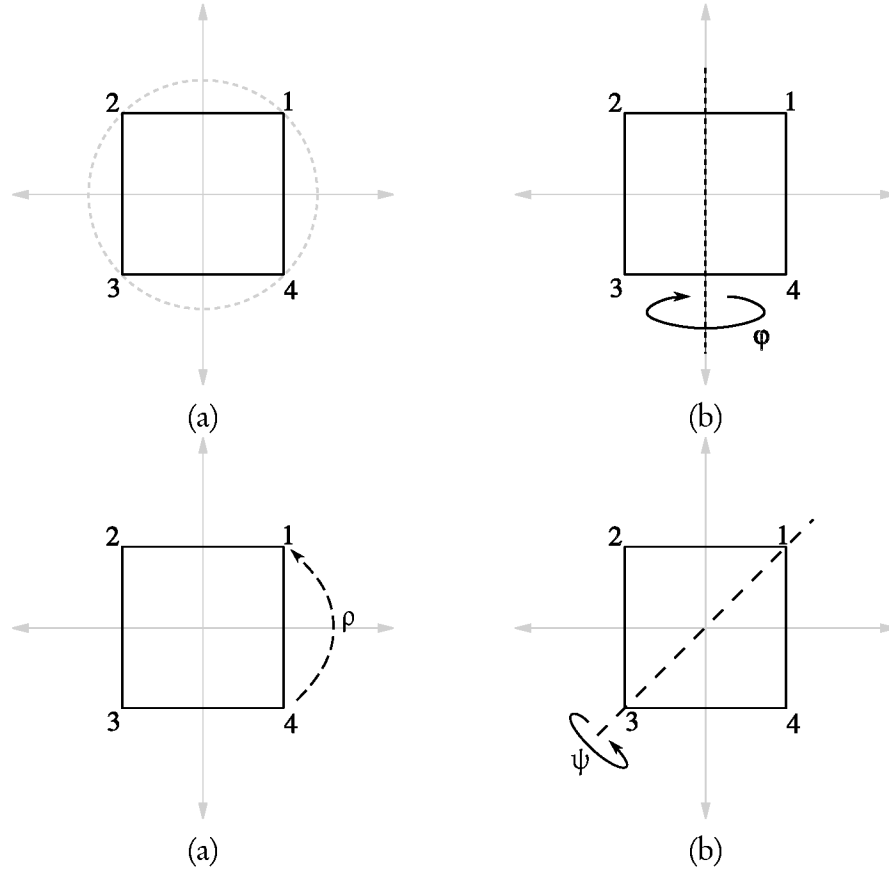


Figure 5.3. Rotation and reflection of a square centered at the origin

one across the x -axis,

$$\vartheta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 4)(2 \ 3);$$

and one across a diagonal,

$$\psi = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = (2 \ 4).$$

See Figure 5.3. We can also imagine other diagonals; but they can be shown to be superfluous, just as we show shortly that ϑ and ψ are superfluous. There may be other symmetries of the square, but we'll stop here for the time being.

Is it possible to write ψ as a composition of φ and ρ ? It turns out that $\psi = \varphi \circ \rho$. We can show this by observing that

$$\varphi \circ \rho = (1 \ 2)(3 \ 4)(1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4) = (2 \ 4) = \psi.$$

We can see this geometrically; see Figure 5.4. First, ρ moves $(1, 2, 3, 4)$ to $(4, 1, 2, 3)$. Subsequently, φ moves $(4, 1, 2, 3)$ to $(1, 4, 3, 2)$. Likewise, ψ would permute $(1, 2, 3, 4)$ directly to $(1, 4, 3, 2)$. Either way, we see that $\psi = \varphi \circ \rho$. A similar argument shows that $\vartheta = \varphi \circ \rho^2$, so it looks as if we need only φ and ρ to generate D_4 .

Similar arguments verify that the reflection and the rotation have a property similar to that

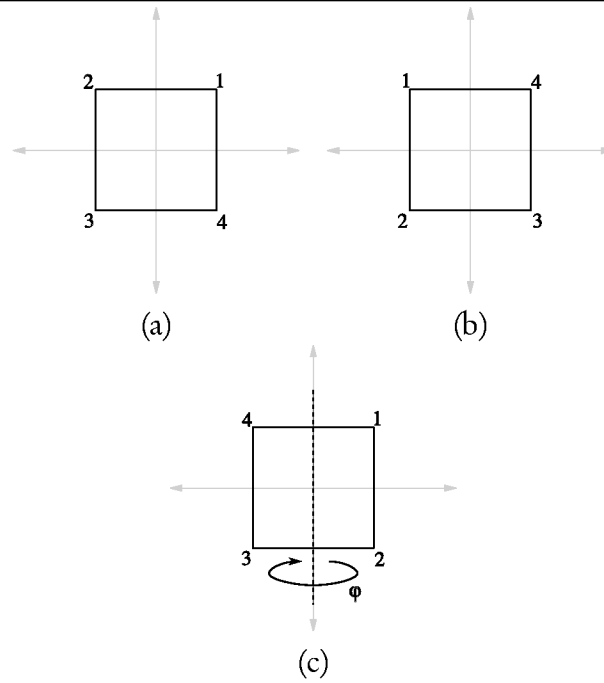


Figure 5.4. Rotation and reflection of a square centered at the origin

in S_3 :

$$\varphi \circ \rho = \rho^3 \circ \varphi,$$

so unless there is some symmetry of the square that cannot be described by rotation or reflection on the y -axis, we can list all the elements of D_4 using a composition of some power of ρ after some power of φ . There are four unique 90° rotations and two unique reflections on the y -axis, implying that D_4 has at least eight elements:

$$D_4 \supseteq \{ \iota, \rho, \rho^2, \rho^3, \varphi, \rho\varphi, \rho^2\varphi, \rho^3\varphi \}.$$

Can D_4 have other elements? There are in fact $|S_4| = 4! = 24$ possible permutations of the vertices, but are they all symmetries of a square? Consider the permutation from $(1, 2, 3, 4)$ to $(2, 1, 3, 4)$: in the basic square, the distance between vertices 1 and 3 is $\sqrt{2}$, but in the configuration $(2, 1, 3, 4)$ vertices 1 and 3 are adjacent on the square, so the distance between them has diminished to 1. Meanwhile, vertices 2 and 3 are no longer adjacent, so the distance between them has increased from 1 to $\sqrt{2}$. Since the distances between points on the square was not preserved, the permutation described, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, is *not* an element of D_4 . The same can be shown for the other fifteen permutations of four elements.

Hence D_4 has eight elements, making it smaller than S_4 , which has $4! = 24$.

Is D_n always a group?

Theorem 5.44. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. If $n \geq 3$, then (D_n, \circ) is a group with $2n$ elements, called the **dihedral group**.

It is possible to prove Theorem 5.44 using the following proposition, which could be proved using an argument from matrices, as in Section 2.2.

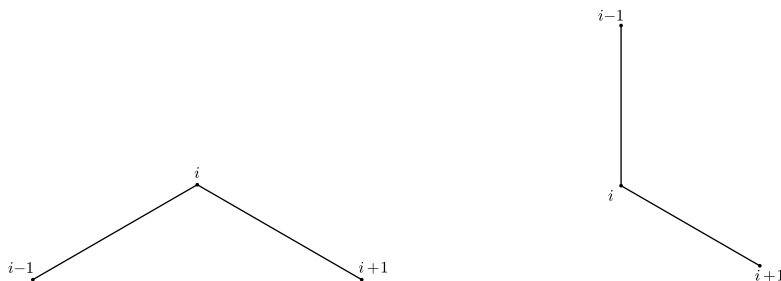


Figure 5.5. To preserve distance between vertices, a permutation of a regular polygon must move vertex i and its neighbors in such a way that they remain neighbors.

Proposition 5.45. All the symmetries of a regular n -sided polygon can be generated by a composition of a power of the rotation ρ of angle $2\pi/n$ and a power of the flip φ across the y -axis. In addition, $\varphi^2 = \rho^n = \iota$ (the identity symmetry) and $\varphi\rho = \rho^{n-1}\varphi$.

However, that would be a colossal waste of time. Instead, we prove the theorem *by turning symmetries of the polygon into permutations*.

D_n and S_n

Our strategy is as follows. For arbitrary $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$, we consider a list $(1, 2, \dots, n)$ of vertices of the n -sided polygon, imagine how they can move without violating the rules of symmetry, and then count how many possible permutations that gives us. We then show that this set of permutations satisfies the requirements of a group.

Proof of Theorem 5.44. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and assume $n \geq 3$. Let $V = (1, 2, \dots, n)$ be a list of the vertices of the n -sided polygon, *in order*. Thus, the distance from vertex $i - 1$ to vertex i is precisely the distance from vertex i to vertex $i + 1$.

What must be true after we apply any symmetry? While vertices $i - 1$, i , and $i + 1$ may have moved, the distances between them *may not* change. Thus, we can rearrange them in the order $i - 1$, i , and $i + 1$, but in different positions, or in the order $i + 1$, i , $i - 1$, in either the same or different positions. That limits our options. To count the number of possible symmetries, then, we start by counting the number of positions where we can move vertex 1: there are n such positions, one for each vertex. As we just observed, the vertex that follows vertex 1 *must* be vertex 2 or vertex n — if we are to preserve the distances between vertices, we have no other choice! (See Figure 5.5.) That gives us only two choices for the vertex that follows vertex 1! We can in fact create symmetries corresponding to these choices — simply count up or down, as appropriate. By the counting principle, D_n has $2n$ elements. But is it a group?

The associative property follows from the fact that permutations are functions, and composition of functions is associative. The identity symmetry, which moves the vertices onto themselves, corresponds to the identity element $\iota \in D_n$. The inverse property holds because (1) any permutation has an inverse permutation, and (2) Exercise 5.40 shows that this inverse permutation reverses the order of entries, so that the requirement that vertex $i - 1$ precede or follow vertex i is preserved.

It remains to show closure. Let $\alpha, \beta \in D_n$, and let $i \in V$. Now, if $\beta(i) = j$, then the preservation of distance between vertices implies that $\beta(i+1)$ either precedes j or succeeds it; that is, $\beta(i+1) = j \pm 1$. If $\alpha(j) = k$, then the preservation of distance between vertices implies that $\alpha(j \pm 1)$ either precedes k or succeeds it; that is, $\alpha(j \pm 1) = k \pm 1$. By substitution,

$$(\alpha \circ \beta)(i) = \alpha(\beta(i)) = \alpha(j) = k$$

and

$$(\alpha \circ \beta)(i+1) = \alpha(\beta(i+1)) = \alpha(j \pm 1) = k \pm 1.$$

We see that $\alpha \circ \beta$ preserves the distance between the vertices, as vertex $i+1$ after the transformation either succeeds or precedes vertex i . Since i was arbitrary in V , this is true for all the vertices of the n -sided polygon. Thus, $\alpha \circ \beta \in D_n$, and D_n is closed.

We have shown that D_n has $2n$ elements, and that it satisfies the four properties of a group. \square

The basic argument we followed above gives us the following result, as well.

Corollary 5.46. For any $n \geq 3$, D_n is isomorphic to a subgroup of S_n . If $n = 3$, then $D_3 \cong S_3$ itself.

Proof. You already proved that $D_3 \cong S_3$ in Exercise 5.37. \square

What we have seen is that some problems, such as the symmetries of a regular polygon, fall naturally into a group-theoretical context if you can formulate the activity as a set of permutations. The next section shows that this is no accident.

Exercises.

Exercise 5.47. Write all eight elements of D_4 in cycle notation.

Exercise 5.48. Construct the composition table of D_4 . Compare this result to that of Exercise 2.84.

Exercise 5.49. Show that the symmetries of any n -sided polygon can be described as a power of ρ and φ , where φ is a flip about the y -axis and ρ is a rotation of $2\pi/n$ radians.

Exercise 5.50. Show that D_n is solvable for all $n \geq 3$.

5.4: Cayley's Theorem

The mathematician Arthur Cayley discovered a lovely fact about the permutation groups. Its effective consequence is that the theory of finite groups is equivalent to the study of groups of permutations.

Theorem 5.51 (Cayley's Theorem). Every group of order n is isomorphic to a subgroup of S_n .

Before we give the proof, we give an example that illustrates how the proof of the theorem works.

Example 5.52. Consider the Klein 4-group; this group has four elements, so Cayley's Theorem tells us that it must be isomorphic to a subgroup of S_4 . We will build the isomorphism by looking at the Cayley table for the Klein 4-group:

\times	e	a	b	ab
e	e	a	b	ab
a	a	e	ab	b
b	b	ab	e	a
ab	ab	b	a	e

To find a permutation appropriate to each element, we'll do the following. First, we label each element with a certain number:

$$\begin{aligned} e &\leftrightarrow 1, \\ a &\leftrightarrow 2, \\ b &\leftrightarrow 3, \\ ab &\leftrightarrow 4. \end{aligned}$$

We will use this along with tabular notation to determine the isomorphism. Define a map f from the Klein 4-group to S_4 by

$$f(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \ell(x \cdot e) & \ell(x \cdot a) & \ell(x \cdot b) & \ell(x \cdot ab) \end{pmatrix}, \quad (11)$$

where $\ell(y)$ is the label that corresponds to y .

This notation can make things hard to read. Why? Well, f maps an element g of the Klein 4-group to a permutation $f(x) = \sigma$ of S_4 . Suppose $\sigma = (1\ 2)(3\ 4)$. Any permutation of S_4 is a one-to-one function on a list of 4 elements, say $(1, 2, 3, 4)$. By definition, $\sigma(2) = 1$. Since $\sigma = f(x)$, we can likewise write, $(f(x))(2) = 1$. This double-evaluation is hard to look at; is it saying " $f(x)$ times 2" or " $f(x)$ of 2"? In fact, it says the latter. To avoid confusion, we adopt the following notation to emphasize that $f(x)$ is a permutation, and thus a function:

$$f(x) = f_x.$$

It's much easier now to look at $f_x(2)$ and understand that we want $f_x(2) = 1$.

Let's compute f_a :

$$f_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ \ell(a \cdot e) & \ell(a \cdot a) & \ell(a \cdot b) & \ell(a \cdot ab) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The first entry has the value $\ell(a \cdot e) = \ell(a) = 2$, telling us that

$$f_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & \ell(a \cdot a) & \ell(a \cdot b) & \ell(a \cdot ab) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The next entry has the value $\ell(a \cdot a) = \ell(a^2) = \ell(e) = 1$, telling us that

$$f_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & \ell(a \cdot b) & \ell(a \cdot ab) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The third entry has the value $\ell(a \cdot b) = \ell(ab) = 4$, telling us that

$$f_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & \ell(a \cdot ab) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The final entry has the value $\ell(a \cdot ab) = \ell(a^2b) = \ell(b) = 3$, telling us that

$$f_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 2)(3 \ 4).$$

So applying the formula in equation (11) definitely gives us a permutation.

Look closely. We could have filled out the bottom row of the permutation by looking above at the Klein 4-group's Cayley table, locating the row for the multiples of a (the second row of the multiplication table), and filling in the labels for the entries in that row! After all,

the row corresponding to a is *precisely*

the row of products $a \cdot y$ for all elements y of the group!

Doing this or applying equation (11) to the other elements of the Klein 4-group tells us that

$$\begin{aligned} f_e &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} = (1) \\ f_b &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 3)(2 \ 4) \\ f_{ab} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \ 4)(2 \ 3). \end{aligned}$$

The result is a subset of S_4 ; or, in cycle notation,

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \{f_e, f_a, f_b, f_{ab}\} \\ &= \{(1), (1 \ 2)(3 \ 4), (1 \ 3)(2 \ 4), (1 \ 4)(2 \ 3)\}. \end{aligned}$$

Verifying that W is a group, and therefore a subgroup of S_4 , is straightforward; you will do so in the homework. In fact, it is a consequence of the fact that f is a homomorphism. Strictly speaking, f is really an isomorphism. Inspection shows that f is one-to-one and onto; the hard part is the homomorphism property. We will use a little cleverness for this. Let x, y in the Klein 4-group.

- Recall that f_x, f_y , and f_{xy} are permutations, and by definition one-to-one, onto functions on a list of four elements.
- Notice that ℓ is also a one-to-one function, and it has an inverse.
- Let $m \in (1, 2, 3, 4)$. For any z in the Klein 4-group, $\ell(z) = m$ if we listed z as the m th entry of the group. Thus $\ell^{-1}(m)$ indicates the element of the Klein four-group that is in the m th position. For instance, $\ell^{-1}(b) = 3$.
- Since f_x is a permutation of a list of four elements, we can look at $f_x(m)$ as the position

where f_x moves an element that starts in the m th position.

- By definition, f_x moves m to $\ell(z)$ where z is the product of x and the element in the m th position. Written differently, $z = x \cdot \ell^{-1}(m)$, so

$$f_x(m) = \ell(x \ell^{-1}(m)). \quad (12)$$

Similar statements hold for f_y and f_{xy} .

- Applying these facts, we observe that

$$\begin{aligned} (f_x \circ f_y)(m) &= f_x(f_y(m)) && \text{(def. of comp.)} \\ &= f_x(\ell(y \cdot \ell^{-1}(m))) && \text{(def. of } f_y) \\ &= \ell(x \cdot \ell^{-1}(\ell(y \cdot \ell^{-1}(m)))) && \text{(def. of } f_x) \\ &= \ell(x \cdot (y \cdot \ell^{-1}(m))) && (\ell^{-1}, \ell \text{ inverses}) \\ &= \ell(xy \cdot \ell^{-1}(m)) && \text{(assoc. prop.)} \\ &= f_{xy}(m). && \text{(def. of } f_{xy}) \end{aligned}$$

- Since m was arbitrary in $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$, f_{xy} and $f_x \circ f_y$ are identical functions.
- Since $f_x f_y = f_x \circ f_y$, we have $f_{xy} = f_x f_y$.
- Since x, y were arbitrary in the Klein 4-group, this holds for the entire group.

We conclude that f is a homomorphism; since it is one-to-one and onto, f is an isomorphism.

You should read through Example 5.52 carefully two or three times, and make sure you understand it, since in the homework you will construct a similar isomorphism for a different group, and also because we do the same thing now in the proof of Cayley's Theorem.

Proof of Cayley's Theorem. Let G be a finite group of n elements. Label the elements in any order $G = \{g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n\}$ and for any $x \in G$ denote $\ell(x) = i$ such that $x = g_i$. Define a relation

$$f : G \rightarrow S_n \quad \text{by} \quad f(g) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & \cdots & n \\ \ell(g \cdot g_1) & \ell(g \cdot g_2) & \cdots & \ell(g \cdot g_n) \end{pmatrix}.$$

By definition, this assigns to each $g \in G$ the permutation whose second row of the tabular notation contains, in order, the labels for each entry in the row of the Cayley table corresponding to g . By this fact, we know that f is one-to-one and onto (see also Theorem 2.13 on page 49). The proof that f is a homomorphism is identical to the proof for Example 5.52: nothing in that argument required x, y , or z to be elements of the Klein 4-group; the proof was for a general group! Hence f is an isomorphism, and $G \cong f(G) < S_n$. \square

What's so remarkable about this result? One way of looking at it is the following: since every finite group is isomorphic to a subgroup of a group of permutations, *everything you need to know about finite groups can be learned from studying the groups of permutations!* A more flippant summary is that *the theory of finite groups is all about studying how to rearrange lists.*

In theory, I could go back and rewrite these notes, introducing the reader first to lists, then to permutations, then to S_2 , to S_3 , to the subgroups of S_4 that correspond to the cyclic group of order 4 and the Klein 4-group, and so forth, making no reference to these other groups, nor to the dihedral group, nor to any other finite group that we have studied. But it is more natural

to think in terms other than permutations (geometry for D_n is helpful); and it can be tedious to work only with permutations. While Cayley's Theorem has its uses, it does not suggest that we should always consider groups of permutations in place of the more natural representations.

Exercises.

Exercise 5.53. In Example 5.52 we found W , a subgroup of S_4 that is isomorphic to the Klein 4-group. It turns out that W maps to a subgroup V of D_4 , as well. Draw the geometric representations for each element of V , using a square and writing labels in the appropriate places, as we did in Figures 2.4 on page 55 and 5.3.

Exercise 5.54. Apply Cayley's Theorem to find a subgroup of S_4 that is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 . Write the permutations in both tabular and cycle notations.

Exercise 5.55. The subgroup of S_4 that you identified in Exercise 5.54 maps to a subgroup of D_4 , as well. Draw the geometric representations for each element of this subgroup, using square with labeled vertices, and arcs to show where the vertices move.

Exercise 5.56. Since S_3 has six elements, we know it is isomorphic to a subgroup of S_6 . In fact, it can be isomorphic to more than one subgroup; Cayley's Theorem tells us only that it is isomorphic to *at least* one. Identify a subgroup A of S_6 such that $S_3 \cong A$, yet A is *not* the image of the isomorphism used in the proof of Cayley's Theorem.

5.5: Alternating groups

A special kind of group of permutations, with very important implications for later topics, are the *alternating groups*. To define them, we need to study permutations a little more closely, in particular the cycle notation.

Transpositions

Definition 5.57. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$. An n -cycle is a permutation that can be written as one cycle with n entries. A **transposition** is a 2-cycle.

Example 5.58. The permutation $(1\ 2\ 3) \in S_3$ is a 3-cycle. The permutation $(2\ 3) \in S_3$ is a transposition. The permutation $(1\ 3)(2\ 4) \in S_4$ cannot be written as only one n -cycle for any $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$: it is the composition of two disjoint transpositions.

Remark 5.59. Any transposition is its own inverse. Why? Consider any transposition $(i\ j)$; it swaps the i th and j th elements of a list. Now consider the product $(i\ j)(i\ j)$. The rightmost $(i\ j)$ swaps these two, and the leftmost $(i\ j)$ swaps them back, restoring the list to its original arrangement. Hence $(i\ j)(i\ j) = (1)$.

Thanks to 1-cycles, any permutation can be written with many different numbers of cycles: for example,

$$(1\ 2\ 3) = (1\ 2\ 3)(1) = (1\ 2\ 3)(1)(3) = (1\ 2\ 3)(1)(3)(1) = \dots$$

A neat trick allows us to write every permutation as a composition of transpositions.

Example 5.60. Verify that

- $(1\ 2\ 3) = (1\ 3)(1\ 2)$;
- $(1\ 4\ 8\ 2\ 3) = (1\ 3)(1\ 2)(1\ 8)(1\ 4)$; and
- $(1) = (1\ 2)(1\ 2)$.

Did you see the relationship between the n -cycle and the corresponding transpositions?

Lemma 5.61. Any permutation can be written as a composition of transpositions.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 5.72. □

Remark 5.62. Given an expression of σ as a product of transpositions, say $\sigma = \tau_1 \cdots \tau_n$, it is clear from Remark 5.59 that we can write $\sigma^{-1} = \tau_n \cdots \tau_1$, as an application of the associative property yields

$$\begin{aligned} (\tau_1 \cdots \tau_n)(\tau_n \cdots \tau_1) &= (\tau_1 \cdots \tau_{n-1})(\tau_n \tau_n)(\tau_{n-1} \cdots \tau_1) \\ &= (\tau_1 \cdots \tau_{n-1})(1)(\tau_{n-1} \cdots \tau_1) \\ &\vdots \\ &= (1). \end{aligned}$$

At this point it is worth looking at Example 5.60 and the discussion before it. Can we write $(1\ 2\ 3)$ with many different numbers of *transpositions*? Yes:

$$\begin{aligned} (1\ 2\ 3) &= (1\ 3)(1\ 2) \\ &= (1\ 3)(1\ 2)(2\ 3)(2\ 3) \\ &= (1\ 3)(1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 3) \\ &= \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

Notice something special about the representation of $(1\ 2\ 3)$. No matter how you try, you only seem to be able to write it as an *even* number of transpositions. By contrast, consider

$$\begin{aligned} (2\ 3) &= (2\ 3)(2\ 3)(2\ 3) \\ &= (2\ 3)(1\ 2)(1\ 3)(1\ 3)(1\ 2) = \cdots. \end{aligned}$$

No matter how you try, you only seem to be able to write it as an *odd* number of transpositions. Is this always the case?

Even and odd permutations

Theorem 5.63. Let $\alpha \in S_n$.

- If α can be written as the composition of an even number of transpositions, then it cannot be written as the composition of an odd number of transpositions.
- If α can be written as the composition of an odd number of transpositions, then it cannot be written as the composition of an even number of transpositions.

Proof. Suppose that $\alpha \in S_n$. Consider the polynomials

$$g = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_i - x_j) \quad \text{and} \quad g_\alpha = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_{\alpha(i)} - x_{\alpha(j)}).$$

Since the value of g_α depends on the permutation α , and permutations are one-to-one functions, g_α is invariant with respect to the representation of α ; that is, it won't change regardless of how we write α in terms of transpositions.

But what, precisely, is g_α ? Sometimes $g = g_\alpha$; for example, if $\alpha = (1 \ 3 \ 2)$ then

$$g = (x_1 - x_2)(x_1 - x_3)(x_2 - x_3)$$

and

$$g_\alpha = (x_3 - x_1)(x_3 - x_2)(x_1 - x_2) = [(-1)(x_1 - x_3)][(-1)(x_2 - x_3)](x_1 - x_2) = g. \quad (13)$$

Is it always the case that $g_\alpha = g$? Not necessarily: if $\alpha = (1 \ 2)$ then $g = x_1 - x_2$ and $g_\alpha = x_2 - x_1 \neq g$. In this case, $g_\alpha = -g$.

Since we cannot guarantee $g_\alpha = g$, can we write g_α in terms of g ? Try the following. We know from Lemma 5.61 that α is a composition of transpositions, so let's think about what happens when we compute g_τ for any transposition $\tau = (i \ j)$. Without loss of generality, we may assume that $i < j$. Let k be another positive integer.

- We know that $x_i - x_j$ is a factor of g . After applying τ , $x_j - x_i$ is a factor of g_τ . This factor of g has changed in g_τ , since $x_j - x_i = -(x_i - x_j)$.
- If $i < j < k$, then $x_i - x_k$ and $x_j - x_k$ are factors of g . After applying τ , $x_i - x_k$ and $x_j - x_k$ are factors of g_τ . These factors of g have not changed in g_τ .
- If $k < i < j$, then $x_k - x_i$ and $x_k - x_j$ are factors of g . After applying τ , $x_k - x_j$ and $x_k - x_i$ are factors of g_τ . These factors of g have not changed in g_τ .
- If $i < k < j$, then $x_i - x_k$ and $x_k - x_j$ are factors of g . After applying τ , $x_j - x_k$ and $x_k - x_i$ are factors of g_τ . These factors of g have changed in g_τ , but the changes cancel each other out, since

$$(x_j - x_k)(x_k - x_i) = [-(x_k - x_j)][-(x_i - x_k)] = (x_i - x_k)(x_k - x_j).$$

To summarize: $x_i - x_j$ is the only factor that changes sign *and* does not pair with another factor that changes sign. Thus, $g_\tau = -g$.

Excellent! We have characterized the relationship between g_α and g whenever α is a transposition! Return to the general case, where α is an arbitrary permutation. From Lemma 5.61, α is

a composition of transpositions. Choose transpositions $\tau_1, \tau_2, \dots, \tau_m$ such that $\alpha = \tau_1 \tau_2 \cdots \tau_m$. Using substitution and the observation we just made,

$$g_\alpha = g_{\tau_1 \cdots \tau_m} = -g_{\tau_2 \cdots \tau_m} = (-1)^2 g_{\tau_3 \cdots \tau_m} = \cdots = (-1)^m g.$$

In short,

$$g_\alpha = (-1)^m g. \quad (14)$$

Recall that g_α depends only on α , *and not on its representation*. Assume α can be written as an even number of transpositions; say, $\alpha = \tau_1 \cdots \tau_{2m}$. Formula (14) tells us that $g_\alpha = (-1)^{2m} g = g$. If we could *also* write α as an odd number of transpositions, say, $\alpha = \mu_1 \cdots \mu_{2m+1}$, then $g_\alpha = (-1)^{2m+1} g$. Substitution gives us $(-1)^{2m} g = (-1)^{2m+1} g$; simplification yields $g = -g$, a contradiction. Hence, α cannot be written as an odd number of transpositions.

A similar argument shows that if α can be written as an odd number of transpositions, then it cannot be written as an even number of transpositions. Since $\alpha \in S_n$ was arbitrary, the claim holds. \square

Lemma 5.61 tells us that any permutation can be written as a composition of transpositions, and Theorem 5.63 tells us that for any given permutation, this number is always either an even or odd number of transpositions. This relationship merits a definition.

Definition 5.64. If a permutation can be written with an even number of permutations, then we say that the permutation is **even**. Otherwise, we say that the permutation is **odd**.

Example 5.65. The permutation $\rho = (1\ 2\ 3) \in S_3$ is even, since as we saw earlier $\rho = (1\ 3)(1\ 2)$. So is the permutation $\iota = (1) = (1\ 2)(1\ 2)$.

The permutation $\varphi = (2\ 3)$ is odd.

At this point, we are ready to define a new group.

The alternating group

Definition 5.66. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}^+$ and $n \geq 2$. Let $A_n = \{\alpha \in S_n : \alpha \text{ is even}\}$. We call A_n **the set of alternating permutations**.

Remark 5.67. Although A_3 is not the same as “ A_3 ” in Example 3.55 on page 95, the two are isomorphic, because $D_3 \cong S_3$. For this reason, we need not worry about the difference in construction.

Theorem 5.68. For all $n \geq 2$, $A_n < S_n$.

Proof. Let $n \geq 2$, and let $x, y \in A_n$. By the definition of A_n , we can write $x = \sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_{2m}$ and $y = \tau_1 \cdots \tau_{2n}$, where $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and each σ_i or τ_j is a transposition. From Remark 5.62,

$$y^{-1} = \tau_{2n} \cdots \tau_1,$$

so

$$xy^{-1} = (\sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_{2m}) (\tau_{2n} \cdots \tau_1).$$

Counting the transpositions, we find that xy^{-1} can be written as a product of $2m + 2n = 2(m + n)$ transpositions; in other words, $xy^{-1} \in A_n$. By the Subgroup Theorem, $A_n < S_n$. Thus, A_n is a group. \square

How large is A_n , relative to S_n ?

Theorem 5.69. For any $n \geq 2$, there are half as many even permutations as there are permutations. That is, $|A_n| = |S_n|/2$.

Proof. We show that there are two cosets of $A_n < S_n$, then apply Lagrange's Theorem from page 91.

Let $X \in S_n/A_n$. Let $\alpha \in S_n$ such that $X = \alpha A_n$. If α is an even permutation, then Lemma 3.28 on page 88 implies that $X = A_n$. Otherwise, α is odd. Let β be any other odd permutation. Write out the odd number of transpositions of α^{-1} , followed by the odd number of transpositions of β , to see that $\alpha^{-1}\beta$ is an even permutation. Hence, $\alpha^{-1}\beta \in A_n$, and by Lemma 3.28, $\alpha A_n = \beta A_n$.

We have shown that any coset of A_n is either A_n itself or αA_n for some odd permutation α . Thus, there are only two cosets of A_n in S_n : A_n itself, and the coset of odd permutations. By Lagrange's Theorem,

$$\frac{|S_n|}{|A_n|} = |S_n/A_n| = 2,$$

and a little algebra rewrites this equation as $|A_n| = |S_n|/2$. \square

Corollary 5.70. For any $n \geq 2$, $A_n \triangleleft S_n$.

Proof. You do it! See Exercise 5.76. \square

There are a number of *exciting* facts regarding A_n that have to wait until later; in particular, A_n has a pivotal effect on whether one can solve polynomial equations by radicals (such as the quadratic formula). In comparison, the facts presented here are relatively dull.

I say that only in comparison, though. The facts presented here are quite striking in their own right: A_n is half the size of S_n , and it is a normal subgroup of S_n . If I call these facts “rather dull”, that tells you just how interesting this group can get!

Exercises.

Exercise 5.71. List the elements of A_2 , A_3 , and A_4 in cycle notation.

Exercise 5.72. Show that any permutation can be written as a product of transpositions.

Exercise 5.73. Show that the inverse of any transposition is a transposition.

Exercise 5.74. Recall the polynomials g and g_α defined in the proof of Theorem 5.63. Compute g_α for the permutations $(1\ 3)(2\ 4)$ and $(1\ 3\ 2\ 4)$. Use the value of g_α to determine which of the two permutations is odd, and which is even?

Exercise 5.75. Recall the polynomials g and g_α defined in the proof of Theorem 5.63. The **sign function** $\text{sgn}(\alpha)$ is defined to satisfy the property,

$$g = \text{sgn}(\alpha) \cdot g_\alpha.$$

Another way of saying this is that

$$\text{sgn}(\alpha) = \begin{cases} 1, & \alpha \in A_n; \\ -1, & \alpha \notin A_n. \end{cases}$$

Show that for any two cycles α, β ,

$$(-1)^{\text{sgn}(\alpha\beta)} = (-1)^{\text{sgn}(\alpha)} (-1)^{\text{sgn}(\beta)}.$$

Exercise 5.76. Show that for any $n \geq 2$, $A_n \triangleleft S_n$.

5.6: The 15-puzzle

The 15-puzzle is similar to a toy you probably played with as a child. It looks like a 4×4 square, with all the squares numbered, except one. The numbering starts in the upper left and proceeds consecutively until the lower right; the only squares that aren't in order are the last two, which are swapped:

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	15	14	

The challenge is to find a way to rearrange the squares so that they are in order, like so:

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	14	15	

The only permissible moves are those where one “slides” a square left, right, above, or below the empty square. Given the starting position above, the following first moves are permissible:

1	2	3	4	or	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8		5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12		9	10	11	
13	15		14		13	15	14	12

The following moves are *not*:

1	2	3	4	or	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8		5	6	7	8
9	10		12		9	10	11	12
13	15	14	11		13	14	15	

We will use groups of permutations to show that that the challenge is impossible.

How? Since the problem is one of rearranging a list of elements, it is a problem of permutations. Every permissible move consists of transpositions $\tau = (x \ y)$ in S_{16} where:

- $x < y$;
- one of x or y is the position of the empty square in the current list; and
- legal moves imply that either
 - $y = x + 1$ and $x \notin 4\mathbb{Z}$; or
 - $y = x + 4$.

Example 5.77. The legal moves illustrated above correspond to the transpositions

- $(15\ 16)$, because square 14 was in position 15, and the empty space was in position 16: notice that $16 = 15 + 1$; and
- $(12\ 16)$, because square 12 was in position 12, and the empty space was in position 16: notice that $16 = 12 + 4$.

The illegal moves illustrated above correspond to the transpositions

- $(11\ 16)$, because square 11 was in position 11, and the empty space was in position 16: notice that $16 = 11 + 5$; and
- $(13\ 14)$, because in the original configuration, neither 13 nor 14 contains the empty square.

Likewise $(12\ 13)$ would be an illegal move in any configuration, because it crosses rows: even though $y = 13 = 12 + 1 = x + 1$, $x = 12 \notin 4\mathbb{Z}$.

How can we use this to show that it is impossible to solve 15-puzzle? We show this in two steps. The first shows that if there is a solution, it must belong to a particular group.

Lemma 5.78. If there is a solution to the 15-puzzle, it is a permutation $\sigma \in A_{16}$, where A_{16} is the alternating group.

Proof. Any permissible move corresponds to a transposition τ as described above. Any solution contains the empty square in the lower right hand corner. As a consequence,

- if $(x\ y)$ is a move left, then the empty square must eventually return to the rightmost row, so there must eventually be a corresponding move $(x'\ y')$ where $[x'] = [x]$ in \mathbb{Z}_4 and $[y'] = [y]$ in \mathbb{Z}_4 ; and,
- if $(x\ y)$ is a move up, the empty square must eventually return to the bottom row, so there must eventually be a corresponding move $(x'\ y')$ of the second type.

Thus, moves come in pairs. The upshot is that any solution to the 15-puzzle must be a permutation σ defined by an even number of transpositions. By Theorem 5.63 on page 156 and Definitions 5.64 and 5.66, $\sigma \in A_{16}$. □

We can now show that there is no solution to the 15-puzzle.

Theorem 5.79. The 15-puzzle has no solution.

Proof. By way of contradiction, assume that it has a solution σ . By Lemma 5.78, $\sigma \in A_{16}$. Because A_{16} is a subgroup of S_{16} , and hence a group in its own right, $\sigma^{-1} \in A_{16}$. Notice $\sigma^{-1}\sigma = \iota$, the permutation which corresponds to the configuration of the solution.

Now σ^{-1} is a permutation corresponding to the moves that change the arrangement

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	14	15	

into the arrangement

1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12
13	15	14	

which corresponds to $(14\ 15)$. Regardless of the transpositions used, the representation must simplify to $\sigma^{-1} = (14\ 15)$. This shows that $\sigma \notin A_{16}$, which contradicts the assumption that we have a contradiction. \square

As a historical note, the 15-puzzle was developed in 1878 by an American puzzlemaker, who promised a \$1,000 reward to the first person to solve it. Most probably, the puzzlemaker knew that no one would ever solve it: if we account for inflation, the reward would correspond to \$22,265 in 2008 dollars.¹⁸

The textbook [Lau03] contains a more general discussions of solving puzzles of this sort using algebra.

Exercises

Exercise 5.80. Determine which of these configurations, if any, is solvable by the same rules as the 15-puzzle:

1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4	3	6	4	7
5	6	7	8	5	10	6	8	1	2	12	8
9	10	12	11	13	9	7	11	5	15	10	14
13	14	15		14	15	12		9	13	11	

¹⁸According to the website <http://www.measuringworth.com/ppowerus/result.php>.